

1

2 **National Clinical Guideline developed by the National Collaborating**
3 **Centre for Acute Care.**

4

5

6

7

Faecal incontinence

8

The management of faecal 9 incontinence in adults

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

17

18

19

20

21

**Commissioned by the National Institute for Health and Clinical
Excellence**

DRAFT FOR CONSULTATION

1 Published by the National Collaborating Centre for Acute Care at The Royal
2 College of Surgeons of England, 35-43 Lincoln's Inn Fields, London, WC2A
3 3PE

4 First published 2006

5

6 © National Collaborating Centre for Acute Care 2006

7 Apart from any fair dealing for the purposes of research or private study,
8 criticism or review, as permitted under the Copyright, Designs and Patents
9 Act, 1988, no part of this publication may be reproduced, stored or transmitted
10 in any form or by any means, without the prior written permission of the
11 publisher or, in the case of reprographic reproduction, in accordance with the
12 terms of licences issued by the Copyright Licensing Agency in the UK.
13 Enquiries concerning reproduction outside the terms stated here should be
14 sent to the publisher at the UK address printed on this page.

15 The use of registered names, trademarks, etc. in this publication does not
16 imply, even in the absence of a specific statement, that such names are
17 exempt from the relevant laws and regulations and therefore for general use.

18 The rights of National Collaborating Centre for Acute Care to be identified as
19 Author of this work have been asserted by them in accordance with the
20 Copyright, Designs and Patents Act, 1988.

21

22 ISBN XXXXXXXXXX

1 **Foreword**

2 Faecal incontinence, the involuntary loss of solid or liquid stool, has been a
3 neglected health care problem, in the UK and around the world. In many
4 instances it has been overshadowed by the more prevalent urinary
5 incontinence, which itself has only recently gained widespread attention. Yet
6 faecal incontinence is likely to affect over half a million adults in the UK and
7 often it has very profound negative consequences for the patient. Fear of
8 embarrassment, even at worst public humiliation, can impose major
9 restrictions on the individual and the family. For this reason, the decision of
10 NICE to address this hidden topic is most welcome.

11 Possibly past neglect of faecal incontinence has been because of the lack of a
12 single professional healthcare group which takes a lead on this problem.
13 Patients might be managed in primary care, or by colorectal surgeons,
14 gastroenterologists, neurologists, care of the elderly specialists, or most often
15 nobody. Continence nurses and physiotherapists have traditionally, with a few
16 exceptions, focused more on urinary than faecal incontinence.

17 The task of producing a guideline on the management of faecal incontinence
18 in adults has presented challenges, the greatest of which has been the almost
19 complete absence of high quality evidence for most assessment and
20 treatment methods. The guideline development group was therefore faced
21 with a choice: recommending nothing in the absence of good evidence, or
22 doing the best that we could on lesser quality evidence and expert opinion.
23 We chose the latter as we felt that the needs of patients demanded that we at
24 least provide a starting point. But we urge the reader to remember that little of
25 what is contained in this guideline is based on incontrovertible evidence.

26 A second major challenge has been the absence of agreed and validated
27 outcome measures for faecal incontinence. There is particularly an absence of
28 measures based on patients' views of what is important in outcomes. For this
29 reason, we have included a section on patients' views, from the very limited
30 evidence that could be obtained. With a non life-threatening symptom such as
31 faecal incontinence, where there is no objective gold standard for measuring
32 symptoms, the patient's view must be paramount.

33 Some of our recommendations may seem conservative: such as avoiding
34 costly unproven investigations and surgical interventions, at least in the
35 absence of very specific indications. This is not because we believe that
36 faecal incontinence should not be managed in the most vigorous manner, but
37 rather that we wish to avoid potentially harmful interventions, pending the
38 availability of better research.

39 The overall message of this guideline is simple: do not ignore the symptom of
40 faecal incontinence and assume that nothing can be done. Clinical experience
41 suggests that the majority of patients can be at least improved, and in many
42 instances symptoms can be resolved. Success will usually depend upon
43 identifying the often complex interaction of factors causing symptoms for each

1 individual, and some persistence in finding a combination of interventions that
2 gives best control of those symptoms.

3 NICE guidelines are by their nature intended for the general situation, aiming
4 to cover 80% of cases 80% of the time, rather than being totally all-inclusive of
5 all possible eventualities. Guidelines deliberately suggest what should be
6 done, rather than specifying service configurations and personnel to deliver
7 care. We hope that this guideline will raise awareness, lead to structured
8 systematic thinking about faecal incontinence and in time stimulate research
9 that will improve quality of life for a substantial number of people.

10 **Professor Christine Norton**

11 **Chair, Guideline Development Group**

1 Contents

2	Foreword.....	3
3	Contents	5
4	Guideline group membership and acknowledgements	8
5	Stakeholder Involvement	11
6	Glossary.....	12
7	Abbreviations.....	29
8	1 Introduction and methods	32
9	1.1 The need for guidelines on the management of faecal incontinence	32
10	1.2 What is a guideline?	35
11	1.3 The National Collaborating Centre for Acute Care	36
12	1.4 Remit of the guideline.....	36
13	1.5 What the guideline covers	37
14	1.6 What the guideline does not cover	37
15	1.7 Who developed the guideline	37
16	1.8 Methodology	37
17	1.9 Summary of the recommendations.....	52
18	2 Good practice in managing faecal incontinence.....	69
19	2.1 Introduction.....	69
20	2.2 General principles of patient-centred care.....	70
21	2.3 Systematic review of research into patient views on experiences and behaviour.....	71
22		
23	2.4 Systematic review on patient views of interventions to manage faecal incontinence	76
24		
25	2.5 Do any educational interventions improve outcome for patients with faecal incontinence?.....	77
26		
27	2.6 Recommendations.....	78
28	2.7 Recommendations for research.....	82
29	3 Baseline assessment and initial management of faecal incontinence	84
30	3.1 Baseline assessment introduction	85
31	3.2 What does a structured assessment add to the assessment of patients with faecal incontinence?	86
32		
33	3.3 What does clinician examination add to the assessment of the patient with faecal incontinence?	87
34		
35	3.4 What does patient-reporting add to the assessment of the patient with faecal incontinence?.....	89
36		
37	3.5 Research on patient views of assessment	90
38	3.6 Initial management introduction.....	91
39	3.7 What is the effectiveness of modifying diet or fluid intake in managing faecal incontinence?.....	92
40		
41	3.8 What is the effectiveness of modifying drug administration in managing FI? 94	
42		
43	3.9 What is the effectiveness of any combination of dietary, fluid or drug administration in managing FI?.....	98
44		
45	3.10 What are the most effective products (absorbent products, containment and plugs) to manage faecal incontinence?.....	99
46		
47	3.11 What are the most effective skin care products to manage faecal incontinence?	103
48		
49	3.12 What is the best practice goal setting (including involving patients) for satisfactory treatment of faecal incontinence?.....	106
50		

1	3.13	Research on patient views of initial management.....	107
2	3.14	Recommendations on baseline assessment	108
3	3.15	Recommendations on initial management.....	109
4	4	Specialised management of faecal incontinence.....	117
5	4.1	What is the effectiveness of pelvic floor/ anal sphincter exercises versus all other conservative therapies?	118
6			
7	4.2	What is the effectiveness of biofeedback vs all other conservative therapies?.....	121
8			
9	4.3	Which modality of biofeedback is most effective at managing faecal incontinence?	124
10			
11	4.4	What is the effectiveness of electrical stimulation to manage faecal incontinence?	127
12			
13	4.5	Recommendations.....	129
14	4.6	Recommendation for research	131
15	5	Specialist assessment	132
16	5.1	What does functional testing add to the assessment of patients with faecal incontinence?.....	133
17			
18	5.2	What do imaging tests add to the assessment of patients with faecal incontinence?	135
19			
20	5.3	What does endoscopy add to the assessment of patients with faecal incontinence?	138
21			
22	5.4	Are any investigation techniques better than others?	139
23	5.5	Which combinations of tests effectively select patients for specific treatment strategies?	142
24			
25	5.6	Recommendations on specialist assessment.....	144
26	5.7	Recommendation for research	146
27	6	Surgical management of faecal incontinence.....	147
28	6.1	Is surgery effective and does it last compared with no surgery (conservative treatment)?.....	149
29			
30	6.2	Are any surgical interventions more effective than others?	153
31	6.3	Do any interventions, pre or post surgery, affect the outcome of surgery for FI?	157
32			
33	6.4	Systematic review of case series.....	159
34	6.5	Conclusions from surgical case series	164
35	6.6	Research on patient views	165
36	6.7	Recommendations.....	166
37	7	Specific patient groups with faecal incontinence.....	171
38	7.1	What procedures are effective in patients or residents in care homes with faecal incontinence related to faecal loading, impaction or constipation?	172
39			
40			
41	7.2	What procedures are effective in patients with limited mobility and faecal incontinence?.....	174
42			
43	7.3	In patients who report faecal incontinence who are using enteral nutritional support, what is the effect of lactose free nutritional intervention vs nutritional intervention containing lactose on patient related outcomes?	176
44			
45			
46			
47	7.4	In patients who report faecal incontinence using antibiotics, what is the effect of probiotics vs no probiotics on patient related outcomes? 178	
48			
49			
50	7.5	Patients with severe cognitive impairment.....	179
51	7.6	Patients with neurological or spinal disease/injury.....	181

DRAFT FOR CONSULTATION

1	7.7	Recommendations.....	182
2	7.8	Recommendation for research	188
3		Bibliography	189

4 **Please note:** the citation numbers in the chapters document refer to the bibliography at the
5 end of the chapters document; the citation numbers in the appendices refer to the
6 bibliography at the end of the appendices.

7

8 Appendices A–N are in a separate file for consultation

1 **Guideline group membership and acknowledgements**

2 ***Guideline development group***

3 **Professor Christine Norton (Chair)** Professor of Gastrointestinal Nursing,
4 Kings College, London, & Nurse
5 Consultant, St Mark's Hospital
6 Harrow.

7 **Professor James Barrett** Consultant Physician, Wirral
8 Hospital, & Professor of Healthcare
9 of Older People, Liverpool John
10 Moores University, British Geriatrics
11 Society.

12 **Mr David Bartolo** Consultant Colorectal Surgeon,
13 Western General Hospital,
14 Edinburgh, Association of
15 Coloproctology of Great Britain and
16 Ireland, The Royal College of
17 Surgeons, Edinburgh.

18 **Ms Susan Bennett** Patient Representative, Incontact

19 **Dr Anton Emmanuel** Consultant Gastroenterologist &
20 Senior Lecturer in
21 Neurogastroenterology University
22 College Hospital, London, Royal
23 College of Physicians, British Society
24 of Gastroenterology

25 **Mrs June Gallagher** Clinical Development Nurse,
26 Barchester Healthcare, Royal
27 College of Nursing.

28 **Miss Julie Lang** Clinical Specialist Physiotherapist,
29 Victoria Infirmary, Glasgow, Clinical
30 Effectiveness Forum for Allied Health
31 Professionals.

32 **Ms Marlene Powell** Community-based Continence
33 Advisor, St Martins Hospital, Bath,
34 Association for Continence Advice.

35 **Dr Judith Wardle** Patient Representative, Continence
36 Foundation, London

37

38

1 ***NCC-AC staff on the Guideline Development Group***

2	Ms Louise Thomas	Project Manager
3	Dr John Browne	Methodology Advisor
4	Ms Clare Jones	Research Associate
5	Mr Peter B Katz	Information Scientist
6	Ms Veena Mazarello Paes	Research Associate
7	Ms Kathryn Oliver	Research Associate
8	Mr David Wonderling	Senior Health Economist

9

10 ***Expert advisors to the Guideline Development Group***

11	Mr Christopher Chan	Senior Lecturer, Consultant Surgeon
12	Mr Graham Scott Duthie	Coloproctologist
13	Professor Scott Glickman	Neurological Rehabilitation Therapist
14	Ms Christine Kettle	Midwife
15	Ms Frances Przygrodska	Dietitian
16	Dr Graham Stokes	Psychologist
17	Mr Abdul Sultan	Obstetric Advisor
18	Dr Stuart Taylor	Specialist Radiologist
19	Ms Julie Vickerman	Occupational Therapist

20

21

22

23

24

25

1 ***Acknowledgements***

2 The development of this guideline was greatly assisted by the following
3 people:

4 **NCC-AC**

5 Rifna Aktar, Dr Gianluca Baio, Sophie Capo-Bianco, Enrico De Nigris, Kelly
6 Dickinson, Saoussen Ftouh, Dr Jennifer Hill, Dr Jacqueline Rainsbury, Carlos
7 Sharpin, Nishanthi Tallawila.

8 **Other contributors**

9 Dr Mandy Fader, Dr Raj Kumar, Dr Susan Langham, Professor Tim Stokes,
10 Ms Carolynne Vaizey, Professor Norman Williams.

11 **Conflicts of interest**

12 The Guideline Development Group members were asked to declare any
13 possible conflicts of interest and none that could interfere with their work on
14 the guideline were declared (see appendix N).

1 **Stakeholder Involvement**

2 The following stakeholders registered with NICE and were invited to comment
3 on draft versions of these guidelines:

4

5 **To be completed after consultation**

1 Glossary

Absolute risk reduction (Risk difference)	The difference in the risk of an event between two groups (one subtracted from the other) in a comparative study.
Abstract	Summary of a study, which may be published alone or as an introduction to a full scientific paper.
Algorithm (in guidelines)	A flow chart of the clinical decision pathway described in the guideline, where decision points are represented with boxes, linked with arrows.
Allocation concealment	The process used to prevent advance knowledge of group assignment in a randomised controlled trial (RCT). The allocation process should be impervious to any influence by the individual making the allocation, by being administered by someone who is not responsible for recruiting participants.
Anal plug	Product intended to prevent faecal leakage from the anus.
Anal sphincter repair	Surgical repair of the anal sphincter.
Antegrade continence enema (ACE) operation	An operation to bring the appendix onto the abdominal wall to allow a catheter to be inserted into the colon (also known as Malone operation). Liquids and laxatives can be instilled to wash out the colon.
Applicability	The degree to which the results of an observation, study or review are likely to hold true in a particular clinical practice setting.
Arm (of a clinical study)	Sub-section of individuals within a study who receive one particular intervention, for example placebo arm.
Artificial bowel sphincter (ABS)	A cuff made of silicone that encircles the anus and contains liquid that is transferred between a reservoir and the cuff. This either opens or occludes the anal canal.

Association	Statistical relationship between two or more events, characteristics or other variables. The relationship may or may not be causal.
Audit	See 'Clinical audit'.
Base case analysis	The results of an economic evaluation using the best point estimate for each model parameter. This contrasts with the term <i>sensitivity analysis</i> .
Baseline	The initial set of measurements at the beginning of a study (after run-in period where applicable), with which subsequent results are compared.
Baseline assessment	Baseline assessment includes structured assessment, clinician examination and patient reporting of symptoms.
Bias	Systematic (as opposed to random) deviation of the results of a study from the 'true' results that is caused by the way the study is designed or conducted.
Biofeedback	Use of equipment to amplify and display bodily functions that are normally subconscious or automatic, with the aim of improving that function.
Bioinjectible material	Biocompatible material injected into the body with the aim of improving function.
Blinding (masking)	Keeping the study participants, caregivers, researchers and outcome assessors unaware about the interventions to which the participants have been allocated in a study
Bristol Stool Scale	Rating of stool consistency on a 7 point scale from hard to liquid.
Carer (caregiver)	Someone other than a health professional who is involved in caring for a person with a medical condition.
Case-control study	Comparative observational study in which the investigator selects individuals who have experienced an event (for example, developed a disease) and others who have not (controls), and then collects data to

determine previous exposure to a possible cause.

Case series	Report of a number of cases of a given disease, usually covering the course of the disease and the response to treatment. There is no comparison (control) group of patients.
Cleveland Clinic Incontinence Score	A scale from 0-20 where 0 = perfect continence and 20 = complete incontinence.
Clinical audit	A quality improvement process that seeks to improve patient care and outcomes through systematic review of care against explicit criteria and the implementation of change.
Clinical efficacy	The extent to which an intervention is active when studied under controlled research conditions.
Clinical effectiveness	The extent to which an intervention produces an overall health benefit in routine clinical practice.
Clinical impact	The effect that a guideline recommendation is likely to have on the treatment or treatment outcomes, of the target population.
Clinical question	In guideline development, this term refers to the questions about treatment and care that are formulated to guide the development of evidence-based recommendations.
Clinician	A healthcare professional providing direct patient care, for example doctor, nurse or physiotherapist.
Cochrane Library	A regularly updated electronic collection of evidence-based medicine databases, including the Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews.
Cochrane Review	A systematic review of the evidence from randomised controlled trials relating to a particular health problem or healthcare intervention, produced by the Cochrane Collaboration. Available electronically as part of the

Cochrane Library.

Cohort study	A retrospective or prospective follow-up study. Groups of individuals to be followed up are defined on the basis of presence or absence of exposure to a suspected risk factor or intervention. A cohort study can be comparative, in which case two or more groups are selected on the basis of differences in their exposure to the agent of interest.
Co-morbidity	Co-existence of more than one disease or an additional disease (other than that being studied or treated) in an individual.
Colostomy	Operation to divert bowel contents through the abdominal wall via a 'stoma'. Usually a bag is worn to collect faeces.
Comparability	Similarity of the groups in characteristics likely to affect the study results (such as health status or age).
Compliance	See 'Concordance'.
Concordance	The extent to which a person adheres to the health advice agreed with healthcare professionals. May also be referred to as 'adherence' or 'compliance'.
Confidence interval (CI)	A range of values for an unknown population parameter with a stated 'confidence' (conventionally 95%) that it contains the true value. The interval is calculated from sample data, and generally straddles the sample estimate. The 'confidence' value means that if the method used to calculate the interval is repeated many times, then that proportion of intervals will actually contain the true value.
Confounding	In a study, confounding occurs when the effect of an intervention on an outcome is distorted as a result of an association between the population or intervention or outcome and another factor (the 'confounding variable') that can influence the outcome independently of the intervention under study.

Consensus methods	Techniques that aim to reach an agreement on a particular issue. Formal consensus methods include Delphi and nominal group techniques, and consensus development conferences. In the development of clinical guidelines, consensus methods may be used where there is a lack of strong research evidence on a particular topic. Expert consensus methods will aim to reach agreement between experts in a particular field.
Conservative management	Non-surgical treatment
Control group	A group of patients recruited into a study that receives no treatment, a treatment of known effect, or a placebo (dummy treatment) - in order to provide a comparison for a group receiving an experimental treatment, such as a new drug.
Controlled clinical trial (CCT)	A study testing a specific drug or other treatment involving two (or more) groups of patients with the same disease. One (the experimental group) receives the treatment that is being tested, and the other (the comparison or control group) receives an alternative treatment, a placebo (dummy treatment) or no treatment. The two groups are followed up to compare differences in outcomes to see how effective the experimental treatment was. A CCT where patients are randomly allocated to treatment and comparison groups is called a <i>randomised controlled trial</i> .
Cost-benefit analysis	A type of economic evaluation where both costs and benefits of healthcare treatment are measured in the same monetary units. If benefits exceed costs, the evaluation would recommend providing the treatment.
Cost-consequences analysis (CCA)	A type of economic evaluation where various health outcomes are reported in addition to cost for each intervention, but there is no overall measure of health gain.
Cost-effectiveness analysis (CEA)	An economic study design in which consequences of different interventions are measured using a single outcome, usually in 'natural' units (for example, life-years gained, deaths avoided, heart attacks avoided, cases detected). Alternative interventions are then

compared in terms of cost per unit of effectiveness.

Cost-utility analysis (CUA) A form of cost-effectiveness analysis in which the units of effectiveness are quality-adjusted life-years (QALYs).

Decision analysis or Decision model A systematic way of reaching decisions, based on evidence from research. This evidence is translated into probabilities, and then into diagrams or decision trees which direct the clinician through a succession of possible scenarios, actions and outcomes. It can be used to estimate effectiveness or cost-effectiveness.

Defaecography X-ray to examine the structure of the anorectum and its function during bowel emptying

Discounting Costs and perhaps benefits incurred today have a higher value than costs and benefits occurring in the future. Discounting health benefits reflects individual preference for benefits to be experienced in the present rather than the future. Discounting costs reflects individual preference for costs to be experienced in the future rather than the present.

Dominance An intervention is said to be dominated if there is an alternative intervention that is both less costly and more effective.

Dosage The prescribed amount of a drug to be taken, including the size and timing of the doses.

Double blind study A study in which neither the subject (patient) nor the observer (investigator/clinician) is aware of which treatment nor intervention the subject is receiving. The purpose of blinding is to protect against bias.

Double incontinence Urinary and faecal incontinence.

Drop-out A participant who withdraws from a clinical trial before the end.

Dynamic Operation which transposes the gracilis muscle from the

graciloplasty (DGP)	leg and wraps it around the anus to form a new sphincter. An implanted electrical stimulator keeps the muscle contracted and thus the anus closed.
Economic evaluation	Comparative analysis of alternative health strategies (interventions or programmes) in terms of both their costs and consequences.
Effect (as in effect measure, treatment effect, estimate of effect, effect size)	The observed association between interventions and outcomes or a statistic to summarise the strength of the observed association.
Effectiveness	See 'Clinical effectiveness'.
Efficacy	See 'Clinical efficacy'.
Elective	Non-emergency procedure
Electrical stimulation	Use of electrical current to produce a contraction of a striated (voluntary) muscle.
Endoanal ultrasound	Ultrasound images of the anal sphincter taken using an intra-anal probe.
Endoscopy	Use of an endoscope to image the interior of the bowel.
Epidemiological study	The study of a disease within a population, defining its incidence and prevalence and examining the roles of external influences (for example, infection, diet) and interventions.
Evidence	Information on which a decision or guidance is based. Evidence is obtained from a range of sources including randomised controlled trials, observational studies, expert opinion (of clinical professionals and/or patients).
Evidence table	A table summarising the results of a collection of studies which, taken together, represent the evidence supporting a particular recommendation or series of

recommendations in a guideline.

Exclusion criteria (literature review)	Explicit standards used to decide which studies should be excluded from consideration as potential sources of evidence.
Exclusion criteria (clinical study)	Criteria that define who is not eligible to participate in a clinical study.
Expert consensus	See 'Consensus methods'.
Extended dominance	If Option A is both more clinically effective than Option B and has a lower cost per unit of effect, when both are compared with a do-nothing alternative then Option A is said to have extended dominance over Option B. Option A is therefore more efficient and should be preferred, other things remaining equal.
External anal sphincter (EAS)	Voluntary (striated muscle) portion of the anal sphincter.
Extrapolation	In data analysis, predicting the value of a parameter outside the range of observed values.
Faecal collector	Adhesive bag used to collect faeces.
Faecal impaction	The term used when there is large amount of hard faeces in the rectum.
Faecal loading	The term used to describe the presence of a large amount of faeces in the rectum with stool of any consistency.
Follow up	Observation over a period of time of an individual, group or initially defined population whose appropriate characteristics have been assessed in order to observe changes in health status or health-related variables.
Generalisability	The extent to which the results of a study based on measurement in a particular patient population and/or a

specific context hold true for another population and/or in a different context. In this instance, this is the degree to which the guideline recommendation is applicable across both geographical and contextual settings. For instance, guidelines that suggest substituting one form of labour for another should acknowledge that these costs might vary across the country.

Gluteoplasty	Transposition of one or both gluteal muscles from the buttock to form a new anal sphincter. May additionally have an implanted electrical stimulator ('stimulated gluteoplasty').
Gold standard	See 'Reference standard'.
Gracilis neosphincter	See 'Dynamic graciloplasty (DGP)'
Graciloplasty	See 'Dynamic graciloplasty (DGP)'
Harms	Adverse effects of an intervention.
Health economics	The study of the allocation of scarce resources among alternative healthcare treatments. Health economists are concerned with both increasing the average level of health in the population and improving the distribution of health.
Health-related quality of life	A combination of an individual's physical, mental and social well-being; not merely the absence of disease.
Hypothesis	A supposition made as a starting point for further investigation.
Inclusion criteria (literature review)	Explicit criteria used to decide which studies should be considered as potential sources of evidence.
Incremental analysis	The analysis of additional costs and additional clinical outcomes with different interventions.
Incremental cost effectiveness	The difference in the mean costs in the population of interest divided by the differences in the mean outcomes

ratio (ICER)	in the population of interest.
Index	In epidemiology and related sciences, this word usually means a rating scale, for example, a set of numbers derived from a series of observations of specified variables. Examples include the various health status indices, and scoring systems for severity or stage of cancer.
Indication (specific)	The defined use of a technology as licensed by the Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Agency (MHRA).
Initial management	Initial management involves adjusting the patient's fluid intake, diet and medication separately and to ensure they complement each other.
Internal anal sphincter (IAS)	Involuntary (smooth muscle) portion of the anal sphincter.
Internal validity	The degree to which the results of a study are likely to approximate the 'truth' for the participants recruited in a study (that is, are the results free of bias?). It refers to the integrity of the design and is a prerequisite for applicability (external validity) of a study's findings. See 'External validity'.
Intervention	Healthcare action intended to benefit the patient, for example, drug treatment, surgical procedure, psychological therapy.
Intraoperative	Describes timing of anything that happens during a surgical procedure.
Length of stay	The total number of days a patient stays in hospital.
Levatorplasty	This involves plicating the muscles of the pelvic floor above the anal canal, between the rectum and the vagina (anterior levatorplasty) or posterior to the anal sphincter (post anal repair)

Malone operation	See 'Antegrade continent enema (ACE) operation'
Manometry	Measurement of anal sphincter pressures.
Medical devices	All products, except medicines, used in healthcare for the diagnosis, prevention, monitoring or treatment of illness or handicap.
Medicines and Healthcare Products Regulatory Agency (MHRA)	The Executive Agency of the Department of Health protecting and promoting public health and patient safety by ensuring that medicines, healthcare products and medical equipment meet appropriate standards of safety, quality, performance and effectiveness, and are used safely.
Meta-analysis	A statistical technique for combining (pooling) the results of a number of studies that address the same question and report on the same outcomes to produce a summary result. The aim is to derive more precise and clear information from a large data pool. It is generally more reliably likely to confirm or refute a hypothesis than the individual trials.
Narrative summary	Summary of findings given as a written description.
Neosphincter	A replacement for the sphincter when repair is not possible or has failed. See also 'Gracilis neosphincter' and 'Artificial bowel sphincter (ABS)'
Neuropathic faecal incontinence	FI secondary to neurological disease or injury
Neuroprosthesis	Implanted electrical stimulator to act in place of natural neurological impulses
Observational study	Retrospective or prospective study in which the investigator observes the natural course of events with or without control groups; for example, cohort studies and case-control studies.

Odds ratio	A measure of treatment effectiveness. The odds of an event happening in the treatment group, expressed as a proportion of the odds of it happening in the control group. The 'odds' is the ratio of events to non-events.
Outcome	Measure of the possible results that may stem from exposure to a preventive or therapeutic intervention. Outcome measures may be intermediate endpoints or they can be final endpoints. See 'Intermediate outcome'.
P values	The probability that an observed difference could have occurred by chance, assuming that there is in fact no underlying difference between the means of the observations. If the probability is less than 1 in 20, the P value is less than 0.05; a result with a P value of less than 0.05 is conventionally considered to be 'statistically significant'.
Peer review	A process where research is scrutinised by experts that have not been involved in the design or execution of the studies.
Pelvic floor muscles	Muscles extending under the internal organs from the pubic bone at the front to the coccyx (tail bone) at the back.
Perioperative	The period from admission through surgery until discharge, encompassing pre-operative and post-operative periods.
Placebo	An inactive and physically identical medication or procedure used as a comparator in controlled clinical trials.
Placebo effect	A beneficial (or adverse) effect produced by a <i>placebo</i> and not due to any property of the <i>placebo</i> itself.
Plication	Surgical procedure for reducing the size of a hollow structure by taking folds or tucks in its walls
Post-anal repair	Plication of the pelvic floor muscles behind the anus

Postoperative	Pertaining to the period after patients leave the operating theatre, following surgery.
Preoperative	Pertaining to the period before surgery commences.
Primary care	Healthcare delivered to patients outside hospitals. Primary care covers a range of services provided by GPs, nurses and other healthcare professionals, dentists, pharmacists and opticians.
Prognosis	A probable course or outcome of a disease. Prognostic factors are patient or disease characteristics that influence the course. Good prognosis is associated with low rate of undesirable outcomes; poor prognosis is associated with a high rate of undesirable outcomes.
Prospective study	A study in which people are entered into the research and then followed up over a period of time with future events recorded as they happen. This contrasts with studies that are <i>retrospective</i> .
Puborectalis	The back portion of the pelvic floor muscles, around the rectum and anal canal
Qualitative research	Research concerned with subjective outcomes relating to social, emotional and experiential phenomena in health and social care.
Quality of life	See 'Health-related quality of life'.
Quality-adjusted life-year (QALY)	An index of survival that is adjusted to account for the patient's quality of life during this time. QALYs have the advantage of incorporating changes in both quantity (longevity/mortality) and quality (morbidity, psychological, functional, social and other factors) of life. Used to measure benefits in cost-utility analysis. The QALYs gained are the mean QALYs associated with one treatment minus the mean QALYs associated with an alternative treatment.
Quantitative research	Research that generates numerical data or data that can be converted into numbers, for example clinical trials or the national Census which counts people and

households.

Quick Reference Guide An abridged version of NICE guidance, which presents the key priorities for implementation and summarises the recommendations for the core clinical audience.

Randomisation Allocation of participants in a research study to two or more alternative groups using a chance procedure, such as computer-generated random numbers. This approach is used in an attempt to ensure there is an even distribution of participants with different characteristics between groups and thus reduce sources of bias.

Randomised controlled trial (RCT) A comparative study in which participants are randomly allocated to intervention and control groups and followed up to examine differences in outcomes between the groups.

Rectal prolapse Descent of the rectum outside the body through the anal canal

Reference standard (or gold standard) An agreed standard, for example for a test or treatment, against which other interventions can be compared.

Relative risk (RR) The number of times more likely or less likely an event is to happen in one group compared with another (calculated as the risk of the event in group A/the risk of the event in group B).

Reliability/ repeatability The degree of agreement exhibited when a measurement is repeated under identical conditions. Reliability refers to the degree to which the results obtained by a measurement procedure can be replicated.

Remit The brief given by the Department of Health and Welsh Assembly Government at the beginning of the guideline development process. This defines core areas of care that the guideline needs to address.

Resource The likely impact in terms of finance, workforce or other

implication	NHS resources.
Retrospective study	A retrospective study deals with the present/past and does not involve studying future events. This contrasts with studies that are <i>prospective</i> .
Review of the literature	An article that summarises the evidence contained in a number of different individual studies and draws conclusions about their findings. It may or may not be systematically researched and developed.
Sacral nerve stimulation (SNS)	This technique involves stimulating the sacral nerves, usually S3 or S4. Its main advantage is a trial period of temporary stimulation that only involves simple insertion of stimulating wires into the back. If this is successful, the patient can have an implantable stimulator to modulate sacral nerve function and improve continence.
Secca procedure	Radio frequency ablation of tissues with the aim of tightening.
Selection bias (also allocation bias)	A systematic bias in selecting participants for study groups, so that the groups have differences in prognosis and/or therapeutic sensitivities at baseline. Randomisation (with concealed allocation) of patients protects against this bias.
Selection criteria	Explicit standards used by guideline development groups to decide which studies should be included and excluded from consideration as potential sources of evidence.
Sensitivity (of a search)	The proportion of relevant studies identified by a search strategy expressed as a percentage of all relevant studies on a given topic. It describes the comprehensiveness of a search method (that is, its ability to identify all relevant studies on a given topic). Highly sensitive strategies tend to have low levels of specificity and vice versa.
Sensitivity analysis	A means of representing uncertainty in the results of economic evaluations. Uncertainty may arise from missing data, imprecise estimates or methodological controversy. Sensitivity analysis also allows for exploring

the generalisability of results to other settings. The analysis is repeated using different assumptions to examine the effect on the results.

One-way simple sensitivity analysis (univariate analysis): each parameter is varied individually in order to isolate the consequences of each parameter on the results of the study.

Multi-way simple sensitivity analysis (scenario analysis): two or more parameters are varied at the same time and the overall effect on the results is evaluated.

Threshold sensitivity analysis: the critical value of parameters above or below which the conclusions of the study will change are identified.

Probabilistic sensitivity analysis: probability distributions are assigned to the uncertain parameters and are incorporated into evaluation models based on decision analysis.

Specialist assessment	Assessment by a health care professional with specialist training.
Specialised management	Management by a health care professional with specialised training.
Sphincter repair	See anal sphincter repair.
Stakeholder	Those with an interest in the use of a technology under appraisal or a guideline under development. Stakeholders include manufacturers, sponsors, healthcare professionals, and patient and carer groups.
Statistical power	The ability to demonstrate an association when one exists. Power is related to sample size; the larger the sample size, the greater the power and the lower the risk that a possible association could be missed.
Synthesis of evidence	A generic term to describe methods used for summarising (comparing and contrasting) evidence into a clinically meaningful conclusion in order to answer a defined clinical question. This can include systematic review (with or without meta-analysis), qualitative and

narrative summaries.

Systematic review	Research that summarises the evidence on a clearly formulated question according to a pre-defined protocol using systematic and explicit methods to identify, select and appraise relevant studies, and to extract, collate and report their findings. It may or may not use statistical meta-analysis.
Time horizon	The time span used in the NICE appraisal which reflects the period over which the main differences between interventions in health effects and use of healthcare resources are expected to be experienced, and taking into account the limitations of supportive evidence.
Total pelvic floor repair	Surgical tightening of the pelvic floor in front of and behind the anus
Treatment allocation	Assigning a participant to a particular arm of the trial.
Treatment options	The choices of intervention available.
Ultrasonography	The use of sound waves to image the deep structures of the body.
Wexner Incontinence Score	See Cleveland clinic score

1 **Abbreviations**

ABS	Artificial bowel sphincter
ACE	Antegrade continence enema
BNF	British National Formulary
CCA	Cost-consequences analysis
CEA	Cost-effectiveness analysis
CI	Confidence interval
CUA	Cost-utility analysis
DGP	Dynamic graciloplasty
DH	Department of Health
EAS	External anal sphincter
EMG	Electromyography
ES	Electrical stimulation
FI	Faecal incontinence
GDG	Guideline Development Group
GP	General Practitioner
GRADE	Guidelines Recommendations Assessment Development Evaluation
GRP	Guideline Review Panel

HRQL	Health-related quality of life
HTA	Health technology assessment
IAS	Internal anal sphincter
ICER	Incremental cost-effectiveness ratio
INB	Incremental net benefit
LOS	Length of Stay
LY	Life-year
MRI	Magnetic resonance imaging
NCC-AC	National Collaborating Centre for Acute Care
NHS	National Health Service
NICE	National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence
OR	Odds ratio
PICO	Framework incorporating patients, interventions, comparisons, outcomes
PNTML	Pudendal nerve terminal motor latency
PPIP	Patient and Public Involvement Programme
QALY	Quality-adjusted life year
RCT	Randomised controlled trial
RR	Relative risk

SNS Sacral Nerve Stimulation

SR Systematic review

vs Versus

1

1 Introduction and methods

2 1.1 *The need for guidelines on the management of faecal* 3 *incontinence*

4 Faecal incontinence (FI) is a sign or a symptom, not a diagnosis. As such the
5 first task is to arrive at a diagnosis as to the cause/s for each individual. With a
6 stigmatising condition, active case-finding will often be needed, probably best
7 targeted at high risk groups.

8 Current epidemiological information shows that between 1 and 10% of adults
9 are affected, depending upon the definition and frequency used^{1,2}. It is likely
10 that 0.5-1.0% of adults experience regular faecal incontinence which impacts
11 on quality of life². Little is known about the natural history of FI but for some
12 groups (for example, women immediately after childbirth) there does seem to
13 be some spontaneous resolution of symptoms. For understandable reasons, it
14 has remained a largely hidden problem, with many patients feeling too
15 embarrassed or ashamed to admit to symptoms to healthcare professionals,
16 or even to family and friends.

17 There is no consensus on methods of classifying the symptoms and causes of
18 faecal incontinence. The most common classifications include:

19 **By symptom:** for example, whether the patient experiences an urge before
20 leakage (urge faecal incontinence) or has no sensation (passive soiling).

21 **By character of the leakage:** for example, solid, liquid, mucus or flatus ('anal
22 incontinence' being the term most often used to include gas incontinence).

23 **By patient group:** for example, people with neurological conditions; frail older
24 people; women with obstetric injuries.

25 **By presumed primary underlying cause:** for example, damage or
26 weakness of the internal or external anal sphincter, faecal loading,
27 neurological motor and/or sensory impairment, cognitive impairment,
28 problems with toilet access, rectal capacity, gut motility or stool consistency.

29 There are many other possible causes and contributing factors such as diet
30 and fluids, medication, and psychological state, amongst others. During its
31 work, the guideline development group identified seven major patient groups
32 (see section 1.8.3), while acknowledging that there are others.

33 For many people faecal incontinence is the result of a complex interplay of
34 contributing factors, many of which can co-exist. Some may be relatively
35 simple to reverse. For this reason, and because of the scale of the problem,
36 we looked at recommending assessment and initial management in primary
37 care for most patients in the first instance and onward referral if simple
38 measures in the initial care do not have satisfactory results.

1 Prevention was beyond the scope of the current guideline, but we
2 acknowledge that there is much work to be done on preventing faecal
3 incontinence, notably in relation to obstetric-related anal sphincter injuries, in
4 people with neurological diagnoses and in frail older people.

5

6 **1.1.1 Patient views of the consequences of faecal incontinence**

7 As part of the systematic review on patient's views, experiences and
8 behaviour for this guideline we retrieved research on patient views of the
9 consequences of faecal incontinence. The themes of this research are
10 discussed below. The methods of this research are described in section
11 1.8.10.

12 Research into patient views of the consequences of FI focus mainly on the
13 views of women with childbirth injuries and therefore may not be
14 representative of the views of all incontinent patients and their carers.

15 Consequences of having FI encompassed, for patients and carers, both the
16 emotional and physical and operated within both private and public spheres. A
17 thematic analysis revealed the following recurring topics:

- 18 • **Psycho-emotional effects** (six studies³⁻⁸): including stress, distress,
19 tearfulness, anxiety, exhaustion, fear of public humiliation, feeling dirty, poor
20 body-image (related to stoma formation⁶), stated need to be in control of life
21 outside of FI as means of compensation, desire to constrain sexual activity,
22 anticipatory fear (which often increased the likelihood of an incontinent
23 episode)³, anger, humiliation, depression, isolation, secrecy, frustration and
24 embarrassment
- 25 • **Physical symptoms** (three studies^{3,6,9}): there was very little actually
26 discussed about this topic, possibly due to a felt taboo, or embarrassment on
27 the researchers' or patients' side at discussing it. In the four studies which did
28 discuss physical symptoms, the main reported outcomes were to do with
29 success or satisfaction with interventions. 71% (of the 38 with successful
30 sphincter repair) reported improved outcomes⁹, and the majority of patients
31 undergoing stoma creation thought that it restricted their life a little or not at all
32 (83%), although a minority intensely hated it⁶. In the only other study to touch
33 on this topic, patients complained of soreness of skin and of pain in general³.
- 34 • **Exercise** (two studies^{3,7}): this was reported as reduced or stopped by
35 many participants. Walking apparently precipitated incontinence for some and
36 was avoided³. Difficulty in performing everyday tasks such as housework and
37 chores was also reported⁷.
- 38 • **Working** (2 studies^{3,4}): most studies reported professional lives being
39 restricted by FI symptoms, reporting fear of using toilets at work. There was
40 also discussion of the difficulty of talking about the need for flexibility with
41 working hours, especially with male colleagues. In one study, one woman

1 reported getting up as early as 4 am to empty her bowels before going to
2 work, in order to feel better prepared³.

3 • **Relationships**(four studies^{3-5,7}): FI was reported to affect patients'
4 relationships with their partners, families, carers and health professionals
5 drastically. However, most felt that they had some support networks to call on,
6 whether this was a partner, children, friends, family, hospitals or colleagues.
7 Singles reported fearing starting new relationship sand those in long-term
8 relationships said that they had concealed symptoms in the past from their
9 partner³,. However, most said that on disclosure of symptoms, they received
10 warm understanding and support.

11 • **Self-image and appearance** (four studies^{3,4,6,7}): most studies reported
12 negative self-image to be associated with FI. FI also governed clothing choice
13 for many, with some preferring trousers and some skirts, for reasons of
14 cleanliness, ease of removal or comfort. Dark clothing was preferred too, and
15 it was felt difficult generally to feel attractive and sexy, or to wear attractive
16 clothing and underwear³. One study reported that women tended to
17 concentrate on their face and hair in order to distract from or compensate for
18 having to wear protective clothing³.

19 • **Shopping** (two studies^{3,7}): all patients in one study reported difficulties,
20 such as avoiding supermarkets as there were not always public toilets.
21 Communal changing rooms were also a problem, due to embarrassment
22 about soiling or protective clothing, or even fear of having an episode³. Fear of
23 flatus incontinence increased anxiety in public. Other findings suggested that
24 sufferers preferred to stay in hotels rather than at friends' homes as it was
25 less stressful and embarrassing

26 • **Social life** (Four studies^{3,4,6,7}): most studies reported social lives being
27 restricted by FI symptoms. Certain activities were avoided, such as going to
28 the cinema or theatre. In general, social lives were planned around availability
29 of toilets.

30 • **Travel** (two studies^{3,4}): restricted, required careful planning, own car
31 preferred, planned around known availability of public conveniences

32 • **Sex** (four studies^{3,4,7,10}): sexual avoidance or aversion, lack of sexual
33 desire (although interestingly this was not as common as might be expected).
34 In one study¹⁰ all participants said their sex lives had been hampered by FI,
35 and nearly half (4/9 sexually active participants) said they had actually
36 experienced incontinence during coitus, while the remainder (5/9) were
37 worried about it. Of course, this finding may have been affected by the
38 predominately older demography investigated by researchers.

39 • **Toilets** (four studies^{3-5,8}): discussions within focus groups were found
40 to centre on toilets without the prompting of the researchers. Toilets were a
41 major topic of discussion in interviews too. Subtopics ranged from: availability
42 and cleanliness of public toilets, lack of facilities, avoidance of supermarkets
43 due to lack of facilities, preferences for cars as no toilets on some public
44 transport, planning of social life around known availability of toilets, added

1 stress at work due to fear of using communal facilities
2 }CHELVANAYAGAM2000, COLLINGS2004, WONG1995}. From carers'
3 perspectives, problems ranged from difficulty for carers in getting relatives
4 with dementia to use toilets appropriately, need for repeated clean-up
5 operations, incontinence resulting in huge washing loads, to a perceived need
6 to change the house structurally to accommodate changing toileting needs⁵.
7 Inability to use toilet was used as a validation of the need for care, and was
8 seen to impact hugely on the relationships between the patient and carer⁵.

9 This literature demonstrates that FI impacts on virtually all aspects of life and
10 can greatly diminish physical and mental health, and affect patients' personal,
11 social and professional lives.

12

13 **1.2 What is a guideline?**

14 Our clinical guidelines are recommendations for the care of individuals in
15 specific clinical conditions or circumstances within the NHS – from self-care
16 through primary and secondary care to more specialised services. We base
17 our clinical guidelines on the best available research evidence, with the aim of
18 improving the quality of health care. We use predetermined and systematic
19 methods to identify and evaluate the evidence relating to specific clinical
20 questions.

21 Clinical guidelines can:

- 22 • provide recommendations for the treatment and care of people by
23 health professionals
- 24 • be used to develop standards to assess the clinical practice of
25 individual health professionals
- 26 • be used in the education and training of health professionals to help
27 patients to make informed decisions
- 28 • improve communication between patient and health professional

29 While guidelines assist the practice of healthcare professionals, they do not
30 replace their knowledge and skills.

31 We produce our guidelines using the following steps:

- 32 • Guideline topic is referred to NICE from the Department of Health
- 33 • Stakeholders register an interest in the guideline and are consulted
34 throughout the development process.
- 35 • The scope is prepared by the National Collaborating Centre for Acute
36 Care

- 1 • The National Collaborating Centre for Acute Care established a
2 guideline development group
- 3 • A draft guideline is produced after the group assesses the available
4 evidence and makes recommendations
- 5 • There is a consultation on the draft guideline.
- 6 • The final guideline is produced.
- 7 The National Collaborating Centre for Acute Care and NICE produce a
8 number of versions of this guideline:
- 9 • the full guideline contains all the recommendations, plus details of the
10 methods used and the underpinning evidence
- 11 • the NICE guideline presents the recommendations from the full version
12 in a format suited to implementation by health professionals and NHS bodies
- 13 • the quick reference guide presents recommendations in a suitable
14 format for health professionals
- 15 • 'Understanding NICE guidance' is written using suitable language for
16 people without specialist medical knowledge.
- 17 This version is the full version. The other versions can be downloaded from
18 our website at www.rcseng.ac.uk/surgical_research_units/nccac/ or are
19 available from NICE www.NICE.org.uk.

20 **1.3 The National Collaborating Centre for Acute Care**

21 This guideline was commissioned by NICE and developed by the National
22 Collaborating Centre for Acute Care. The centre is one of seven national
23 collaborating centres funded by NICE and comprises a partnership between a
24 variety of academic, professional and patient-based organisations. As a
25 multidisciplinary centre we draw upon the expertise of the healthcare
26 professions and academics and ensure the involvement of patients in our
27 work. Further information on the centre and our partner organisations can be
28 found at our website. (www.rcseng.ac.uk/surgical_research_units/nccac/)

29

30 **1.4 Remit of the guideline**

31 The following remit was received from the Department of Health and the
32 Welsh Assembly Government as part of NICE's 10th wave programme of
33 work:

34 ***To prepare a guideline for the NHS in England and Wales on the***
35 ***management of faecal incontinence.***

36

1 **1.5 *What the guideline covers***

2 The guideline covers adults (age 18 and older) presenting with faecal
3 incontinence (defined as any involuntary loss of faeces that is a social or
4 hygienic problem).

5

6 **1.6 *What the guideline does not cover***

7 Patients under the age of 18 years.

8

9 **1.7 *Who developed the guideline***

10 A multidisciplinary Guideline Development Group (GDG) comprising
11 professional group members and consumer representatives of the main
12 stakeholders developed this guideline (see section Guideline Development
13 Group Membership and acknowledgements).

14 The National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence funds the National
15 Collaborating Centre for Acute Care (NCC-AC) and thus supported the
16 development of this guideline. The GDG was convened by the NCC-AC and
17 chaired by Professor Christine Norton in accordance with guidance from the
18 National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence (NICE).

19 The group met approximately every 6-8 weeks during the development of the
20 guideline. At the start of the guideline development process all GDG members
21 declared interests including consultancies, fee-paid work, share-holdings,
22 fellowships and support from the healthcare industry. At all subsequent GDG
23 meetings, members declared new conflicts of interest, which were also
24 recorded (appendix N). Members are either required to withdraw completely
25 or for part of the discussion if their declared interest makes it appropriate,
26 however this was not deemed necessary for any group members on this
27 guideline.

28 Staff from the NCC-AC provided methodological support and guidance for the
29 development process. They undertook systematic searches, retrieval and
30 appraisal of the evidence and drafted the guideline. The glossary to the
31 guideline contains definitions of terms used by staff and the GDG.

32

33 **1.8 *Methodology***

34 The guideline was commissioned by NICE and developed in accordance with
35 the guideline development process outlined in 'The guidelines manual'
36 updated in April 2006¹¹. Development prior to this stage (for example,
37 development of the scope, early reviewing) was carried out using the
38 methodology outlined in the previous version of the manual (March 2005)¹².

1

2 **1.8.1 Development of clinical questions**

3 Clinical questions were developed to guide the literature searching process
4 and to facilitate the development of recommendations by the guideline
5 development group.

6 The scope (appendix A) was used to put an initial draft of clinical questions
7 together. GDG members were also asked to submit five clinical questions
8 which they considered to be a priority for the guideline. These were
9 incorporated into the subsequent draft of clinical questions. The clinical
10 questions were circulated and considered by the GDG a number of times
11 before a final draft was reached (appendix B).

12

13 **1.8.2 Types of intervention**

14 The GDG considered the following interventions:

15 *Diagnostic tools:*

- 16 • Digital anal examination, clinical/continence assessment, functional
17 assessment (to determine the type of intervention required to resolve
18 problems such as going to the toilet, adjusting clothes), medical examination,
19 physical examination, neurological examination.
- 20 • Records/scores: symptom scores, diaries, Quality of Life (QoL),
21 questionnaires
- 22 • Anal manometry (anal resting and squeeze pressures, and rates of
23 fatigue), rectal distension sensitivity, electro sensitivity testing, Pudendal
24 Nerve Terminal Motor Latency (PNTML), electromyography (EMG), rectal
25 compliance
- 26 • Anal ultrasound, Magnetic resonance Imaging (MRI), defaecography,
27 plain abdominal x-ray, endoscopy and barium enema, rigid sigmoidoscopy,
28 CT colonography.

29

30 *Management interventions*

31 **General:**

- 32 • Educational interventions: provision of information to patients and,
33 where appropriate, their carers, on clinical and practical aspects of their
34 condition

35 **Lifestyle changes:**

- 1 • Exercise and work: physical exercise/mobility, weight loss, job type
- 2 • Smoking: smoking cessation
- 3 • Changing medication (side effects)
- 4 • Diet and fluid intake (dietary manipulation: increased or decreased fibre
5 intake, prebiotics, probiotics and symbiotics, lactose, yogurt, sorbitol, fructose,
6 caffeine and alcohol, and/or eating patterns), fluid intake, type of fluid, volume,
7 timing.

8 **Measures to assist Activities of Daily Living:**

- 9 • Clothing adaptations
- 10 • Absorbent products, disposal facilities/arrangements
- 11 • Bags
- 12 • Plugs
- 13 • Adaptations to toilet facilities, increased privacy, care providers
14 sensitive to needs and bowel habits, manageable clothing, accessibility,
15 raised seat and foot blocks, hand rails, alternative commodes, chemical
16 toilets.
- 17 • Odour control
- 18 • Skin care management

19 **Bowel management and re-training programmes:**

- 20 • Bowel habit: toileting schedules
- 21 • Resisting urgency
- 22 • Evacuation training: decreasing straining/treating constipation,
23 modification of defaecation position, patient administered evacuation
24 techniques, carer administered evacuation techniques.
- 25 • Behaviour modification: reward systems
- 26 • Rectal irrigation: retrograde irrigation (anal), colonic irrigation
- 27 • Digital or other stimulation
- 28 • Manual evacuation
- 29 • Abdominal massage

30 **Drug treatment**

- 31 • Anti-diarrhoeal agents

- 1 • Increasing anal canal pressure
- 2 • Planned bowel evacuation using laxatives, enemas and suppositories

3 **Biofeedback and/or sphincter/pelvic floor exercises**

- 4 • Biofeedback: EMG, manometry, ultrasound, sensitivity training
- 5 • Pelvic floor muscle training/anal sphincter exercises

6 **Non-implanted electrical stimulation**

- 7 • Perineal
- 8 • Perianal
- 9 • Intra-anal

10 **Surgical procedures**

- 11 • Anal sphincter repair
- 12 • Pelvic floor repair (includes levatorplasty and post-anal repair)
- 13 • Neosphincter
- 14 • Bioinjectables
- 15 • Secca procedure
- 16 • Stoma creation
- 17 • Antegrade irrigation (surgically or endoscopically constructed port)
- 18 • Sacral nerve stimulation

19 **Any combination of the above**

20

21 **1.8.3 Types of populations**

22 We searched for studies of patients aged 18 and over reporting faecal
23 incontinence (defined as involuntary loss of liquid or solid stool). The GDG
24 considered that the majority of patients with FI were likely to fall into one or
25 more of the following groups:

- 26 • Structural ano-rectal abnormality (for example, sphincter trauma,
27 sphincter degeneration, perianal fistula, rectal prolapse)
- 28 • Neurological disorders (for example, multiple sclerosis, spinal cord
29 injury, spinal bifida, stroke, other)

- 1 • Constipation/faecal loading (for example, diet, medication,
2 megarectum)
- 3 • Cognitive and/or behavioural dysfunction (for example, dementia,
4 learning disabilities)
- 5 • Loose stools (for example, gastrointestinal problems such as
6 inflammatory bowel disease (IBD), or the irritable bowel syndrome (IBS)
- 7 • Disability related (for example, patients who are frail, acutely unwell, or
8 have chronic/acute disabilities)
- 9 • Idiopathic (for example, self caring adults with faecal incontinence and
10 none of the above)

11

12 **1.8.4 Types of outcomes**

13 The primary outcome of interest was the frequency of episodes of faecal
14 incontinence. This information was not always reported in the retrieved
15 studies and a number of different non-validated continence scores were often
16 used instead. The GDG considered the following list of outcomes to also be of
17 value:

- 18 • Patient-related: incontinent episodes/diary/pad/drug use, bowel
19 frequency, % continent bowel movements, patient and carer quality of life
20 (QoL), anxiety, depression, patient rating of bowel control/change, missed
21 work/avoidance of social occasions, rate of clothing changes, concordance,
22 stool consistency (scale), improvement of activities of daily living, staff
23 satisfaction, carer related outcomes, behavioural rating scales, self esteem,
24 sexual activity.
- 25 • Qualitative data, including patients' experiences, opinions, attitudes,
26 preferences and perceptions.
- 27 • Clinician related: clinician evaluation of result/continence score
- 28 • Biometric measures: anal pressures – rest/squeeze/fatigue rate, rectal
29 compliance, surgical repair success on ultrasound or MRI, rectal sensitivity,
30 EMG
- 31 • Process: length of stay/number of treatment episodes, missed
32 treatment opportunities/futile treatment episodes
- 33 • Adverse events: wound/skin breakdown or infection, other
34 complications, for example: operative septic complications; new evacuation
35 difficulty; failure to cure FI; drug side effects (including bloating);
36 soreness/discomfort; death
- 37 • Cost

1

2 **1.8.5 Literature search for clinical effectiveness evidence**

3 The aim of the literature search was to identify relevant evidence within the
4 published literature, in order to answer the clinical questions identified.
5 Searches of clinical databases were performed using generic and specific
6 filters, relevant medical subject heading terms and free-text terms. Non-
7 English studies and abstracts were not included. Each database was
8 searched up to 2 October 2006. Papers identified after this date were not
9 routinely considered. Search strategies can be found in appendix C. The
10 following databases were included in the literature search to identify relevant
11 journal articles:

- 12 • The Cochrane Library up to 2006 (Issue 3)
- 13 • Medline (Dialog Datastar) 1951-2006
- 14 • Embase (Dialog Datastar) 1974-2006
- 15 • Cinahl (Dialog Datastar) 1982-2006
- 16 • Allied & Complementary Medicine 1985-2006
- 17 • British Nursing Index 1994- 2006
- 18 • PsycINFO 1806-2006
- 19 • The Cochrane Library Issue 3, 2006 (including NHS EED)
- 20 • Health Economic and Evaluations Database (HEED)

21 Bibliographies of identified reports and guidelines were also checked to
22 identify relevant literature. The Internet was searched to identify guidelines
23 and reports. The following web sites were used to help identify these:

- 24 • Members of the Guidelines International Network's web sites
25 (<http://www.g-i-n.net>)
- 26 • National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence (NICE)
27 (www.nice.org.uk)
- 28 • National electronic Library for Health (NeLH) (<http://www.nelh.nhs.uk>)
- 29 • Scottish Intercollegiate Guideline Network (SIGN) (www.sign.ac.uk)
- 30 • US National Guideline Clearing House (www.guidelines.gov)
- 31 • CMA Infobase (<http://mdm.ca/cpgsnew/cpgs/>)
- 32 • NIH Consensus Development Program (<http://consensus.nih.gov>)
- 33 • New Zealand Guidelines Group (<http://www.nzgg.org.nz>)

- 1 • Royal College of Surgeons of England (www.rcseng.ac.uk)
- 2 • Royal College of Physicians of London (<http://www.rcplondon.ac.uk>)
- 3 • The Joanna Briggs Institute (<http://www.joannabriggs.edu.au>)
- 4 • National Institute of Clinical Studies (<http://www.nicsl.com.au>)
- 5 • Royal College of Nursing (<http://www.rcn.org.uk>)
- 6 • Royal Australasian College of General Practitioners
- 7 (<http://www.racgp.org.au>)

8

9 **1.8.6 Hierarchy of clinical evidence**

10 There are many different methods of ranking evidence of clinical effectiveness
 11 and there has been considerable debate about which system is best. We used
 12 the system for intervention studies developed by the Scottish Intercollegiate
 13 Guidelines Network (SIGN), shown in Table 1.

14 **Table 1: Levels of evidence for intervention studies (reproduced with permission of the**
 15 **Scottish Intercollegiate Guidelines Network)**

Level of evidence	Type of evidence
1++	High-quality meta-analyses, systematic reviews of RCTs, or RCTs with a very low risk of bias
1+	Well-conducted meta-analyses, systematic reviews of RCTs, or RCTs with a low risk of bias
1-	Meta-analyses, systematic reviews of RCTs, or RCTs with a high risk of bias
2++	High-quality systematic reviews of case-control or cohort studies High-quality case-control or cohort studies with a very low risk of confounding, bias, or chance and a high probability that the relationship is causal
2+	Well-conducted case-control or cohort studies with a low risk of confounding, bias, or chance and a moderate probability that the relationship is causal
2-	Case-control or cohort studies with a high risk of confounding bias, or chance and a significant risk that the relationship is not causal

3	Non-analytic studies (for example, case reports, case series)
4	Expert opinion

1

2 For each clinical question the highest level of evidence (randomised controlled
3 trials and systematic reviews of RCTs) was initially sought.

4 Due to the paucity of data retrieved, non-randomised comparative trials (for
5 example: before-after trials, cohort studies) were also considered for all
6 clinical questions.

7 Due to the limitations of the evidence base on the clinical questions on
8 assessment of FI, diagnostic studies were also retrieved to help inform the
9 development of the recommendations in this area. The following system
10 adapted from 'The Oxford Centre for Evidence-based Medicine Levels of
11 Evidence' (2001) and the Centre for Reviews and Dissemination 'Report
12 Number 4' (2001) was used to rank this evidence.

13 **Table 2: levels of evidence for diagnostic studies**

Levels of evidence	Type of evidence
Ia	Systematic review (with homogeneity) ^a of level-1 studies ^b
Ib	Level-1 studies ^b
II	Level-2 studies ^c Systematic reviews of level-2 studies
III	Level-3 studies ^d Systematic reviews of level-3 studies
IV	Consensus, expert committee reports or opinions and/or clinical experience without explicit critical appraisal; or based on physiology, bench research or 'first principles'

^a Homogeneity means there are no or minor variations in the directions and degrees of results between individual studies that are included in the systematic review.

^b Level-1 studies are studies:

- that use a blind comparison of the test with a validated reference standard (gold standard)
- in a sample of patients that reflects the population to whom the test would apply.

^c Level-2 studies are studies that have only one of the following:

- narrow population (the sample does not reflect the population to whom the test would apply)
- use a poor reference standard (defined as that where the 'test' is included in the 'reference', or where the 'testing' affects the 'reference')
- the comparison between the test and reference standard is not blind
- case-control studies.

^d Level-3 studies are studies that have at least two or three of the features listed for level-2 studies.

1

2 Due to the limitations of the evidence base retrieved for the clinical questions
3 on surgery specifically case series were also retrieved for the surgical
4 interventions considered (see section 6.4).

5

6 **1.8.7 The literature reviewing methods for clinical effectiveness** 7 **evidence**

8 References retrieved by the systematic literature search were screened for
9 appropriateness by title and abstract by an information scientist and a
10 systematic reviewer. Selected studies were ordered and assessed in full by
11 the NCC-AC team using agreed inclusion/exclusion criteria specific to the
12 guideline topic, and using NICE methodology quality assessment checklists
13 appropriate to the study design¹¹. The guideline development group also
14 suggested further references and these were assessed these in the same
15 way. Approximately 10% of studies included in the guideline were appraised
16 and underwent data extraction by two systematic reviewers.

17

1 **1.8.8 Health economic methods**

2 It is important to investigate whether health services are cost-effective (that is,
3 value for money). If a particular treatment strategy were found to yield little
4 health gain relative to the resources used, then it would be better to re-deploy
5 resources to other activities that yield greater health gain.

6 To assess the cost-effectiveness of each recommendation, a comprehensive
7 systematic review of the economic literature was conducted. It was not
8 possible to conduct any formal cost-effectiveness models, since the evidence
9 on effectiveness was very limited across the guideline. Unit costs associated
10 with treatment were collected from standard NHS sources, the literature and
11 from specific NHS Trusts and were discussed with the GDG immediately prior
12 to formal consensus development (see appendix F).

13 The criteria applied for an intervention to be considered cost-effective were
14 either:

15 a) The intervention dominated other relevant strategies (that is, it is both less
16 costly in terms of resource use and more clinically effective compared with the
17 other relevant alternative strategies);

18 or

19 b) The intervention cost less than £30,000 per quality-adjusted life-year
20 (QALY) gained compared with the next best strategy (and compared with
21 basic conservative management). We have used the upper end of NICE's
22 cost-effectiveness range because the social stigma associated with faecal
23 incontinence is unlikely to be fully captured in estimates of quality-adjusted life
24 expectancy¹³.

25 The economic evaluation of any strategy has to be in comparison with another
26 strategy. Hence we refer to:

- 27 • incremental cost: the mean cost of one strategy minus the mean cost of
28 a comparator study.
- 29 • QALYs gained: the mean QALYs associated one strategy minus the
30 mean QALYs of a comparator study.
- 31 • incremental cost-effectiveness ratio: the incremental cost divided by the
32 respective QALYs gained.

33

34 **1.8.9 Literature review for health economics**

35 We obtained published economic evidence from a systematic search of the
36 following databases:

- 37 • Medline (Dialog Datastar) (1966-2006)

- 1 • Embase (Dialog Datastar) (1980-2006)
- 2 • Health Economic Evaluations Database (HEED)
- 3 • NHS Economic Evaluations Database (NHS EED)

4 For those clinical areas we reviewed, the information specialists used the
5 same search strategy as for the clinical questions, using an economics filter in
6 the place of a systematic review or randomised controlled trial filter. Each
7 database was searched from its start date up to 2 October 2006. Papers
8 identified after this date were not routinely considered. Search strategies can
9 be found in appendix C.

10 Each search strategy was designed to find any applied study estimating the
11 cost or cost-effectiveness of an included intervention. A health economist
12 reviewed the abstracts. Relevant references in the bibliographies of reviewed
13 papers were also identified and reviewed.

14 Given the diversity of economic studies, it was not possible to determine a
15 general exclusion criterion based on study quality. Hence, all studies were
16 included in the evidence tables and study quality and applicability are
17 discussed in the review. Papers were only excluded from the evidence tables
18 and review if:

- 19 • The study did not contain any original data on cost or cost-
20 effectiveness (that is, it was a review or a clinical paper).
- 21 • The analysis was not incremental and was not described adequately to
22 allow incremental analysis (so studies reporting only average cost-
23 effectiveness ratios would have been excluded unless they provided data to
24 allow the calculation of incremental cost-effectiveness ratios).

25 Included papers were reviewed by a health economist. In the evidence tables
26 costs are reported as given in the paper. However, where costs were in
27 another currency, the results were converted to pounds sterling using the
28 relevant purchasing power parity for the study year.

29 We have included studies from all over the world in our review, however, we
30 use overseas studies with caution since resource use and especially unit
31 costs vary considerably. Particular caution is applied to studies with
32 predominantly private health insurance (for example, USA or Switzerland)
33 where unit costs may be much higher than in the UK and to developing
34 countries where costs may be much lower.

35 Each study was categorised as one of the following: cost analysis, cost-
36 effectiveness analysis, cost-utility analysis (that is, cost-effectiveness analysis
37 with effectiveness measured in terms of QALYs), or cost-consequences
38 analysis. We did not find any 'cost-benefit analyses' (studies that put a
39 monetary value on health gain).

40 Models are analogous to systematic reviews as they are pooling evidence
41 from a number of different studies and therefore if well-conducted they should

1 out-rank studies based on a single RCT. Statistical significance is not usually
2 applicable to models and uncertainty is explored using sensitivity analysis
3 instead. Hence the results reported in our economics literature review
4 evidence tables and write-up may not necessarily imply statistical significance.

5

6 **1.8.10 Literature review methods for evidence on patient** 7 **views and preferences**

8 A systematic review of patient views was carried out to identify qualitative
9 studies of patients' experiences, perceptions, attitudes and opinions about
10 methods of managing faecal incontinence. Comprehensive and exhaustive
11 searches of the same databases mentioned in 1.8.5 were undertaken. Search
12 strategies can be found in appendix C.

13 Stringent inclusion criteria were applied to the retrieved studies. Studies had
14 to pass all criteria to be included in the review:

- 15 • Faecal incontinence

16 Faecal incontinence (defined as any involuntary loss of faeces that caused a
17 social or hygienic problem) had to be the main topic of investigative research.

- 18 • Patient views research

19 Studies had to primarily access people's views on any of the following: their
20 ideas about, and experiences of, faecal incontinence, interventions targeted at
21 FI; influences on patient decision-making about management options; and
22 their ideas about what could be done to facilitate better care

- 23 • Patient group

24 Patients had to be investigated primarily on the basis of their incontinence,
25 and were not cancer patients, or being treated for rectal prolapse.

- 26 • Publication date

27 Studies were excluded if they were published before 1990.

28 Included studies were then quality assessed. High quality studies were
29 defined as those which solicited views without pre-defining the terms of
30 discussion. We agreed that studies of patients' views should not reflect
31 researchers' a priori assumptions about a topic, but instead access people's
32 views in a non-biased way. In practice, this translates largely to study
33 methodology; open-ended questionnaires, focus groups or interviews tend to
34 be employed by researchers in high-quality studies. Lower quality studies –
35 those which used pre-defined scales to measure quality of life or other
36 subjective outcomes or closed questionnaires - were included to give a
37 broader view of the literature.

1

2 **1.8.11 Evidence submitted by stakeholders**

3 Stakeholders were invited to submit potential evidence of relevance to the
4 guideline. References received were cross-checked with evidence identified
5 through the systematic literature search. Stakeholder-submitted references
6 were assessed using the same criteria for inclusion as studies retrieved in the
7 literature search.

8

9 **1.8.12 Consensus development methods**

10 Due to the poor quality of evidence for most of the clinical questions the
11 guideline development group agreed to use a consensus development
12 exercise to utilise the GDG's expertise in drafting recommendations on the
13 assessment and management of faecal incontinence.

14 We adopted a modified Nominal Group Technique approach for the
15 consensus development exercise. The scope of the guideline was divided into
16 three areas; assessment, conservative management and surgery. For each
17 area, the GDG were presented with available evidence tables (see
18 appendices D and E), economic data (see appendix F) and narrative
19 summaries of the clinical and economic evidence reviewed.

20 Recommendations were drafted on basis of the evidence wherever it was
21 available.

22 A subgroup comprising selected GDG members and nominated expert
23 advisors was convened for each of the three areas. These subgroups met
24 between GDG meetings to consider the drafted recommendations and to
25 develop a care pathway algorithm. The subgroup proposed additional
26 recommendations based on their expert opinion. These recommendations
27 were circulated to the GDG. The GDG was asked to independently feed back
28 their comments on these recommendations to the NCC before their next
29 meeting. This feedback was collated and circulated to the GDG prior to the
30 meeting so that GDG members could consider their own feedback in relation
31 to other group members. An independent facilitator from the NCC facilitated a
32 structured discussion considering each recommendation and the feedback on
33 that recommendation at the GDG meeting. The structured discussion focused
34 on how each recommendation could be improved. Feedback from the
35 discussion was recorded on prepared forms and summarised by the facilitator
36 before moving onto the next recommendation. A draft of recommendations
37 incorporating the feedback from the facilitated discussion was circulated after
38 each consensus development exercise.

39 To encourage the GDG to reach a consensus that was underpinned by the
40 principles of cost-effectiveness, the guideline health economist presented unit
41 cost data and discussed the implications with the Group. This was carried out
42 both at the subgroup meetings where recommendations were proposed and
43 at the GDG meetings where the recommendations were formally agreed.

1 The expert advisors involved in the consensus development process were
2 also given an opportunity to comment on the complete list of
3 recommendations before the first draft of the guideline was submitted for
4 stakeholder consultation (see section 1.8.16).

5

6 **1.8.13 Grading of recommendations**

7 Following a public consultation in April 2006 NICE is no longer publishing
8 grades alongside recommendations contained within its guidance.

9

10 **1.8.14 Research recommendations**

11 When areas were identified for which good evidence was lacking, the
12 guideline development group considered making recommendations for future
13 research. Decisions about inclusion were based on factors such as the
14 importance to patients or the population, national priorities, and the potential
15 impact on the NHS and future NICE guidance. The list of research
16 recommendations proposed for this guideline can be found in section 1.9.3.

17

18 **1.8.15 Prioritisation of recommendations for implementation**

19 To assist users of the guideline in deciding the order in which to implement
20 the recommendations, the guideline development group identified 10 key
21 priorities for implementation. The decision was made after discussion and
22 voting by the GDG. They selected recommendations that would:

23 • Have a high impact on patient outcomes, including mortality and
24 morbidity

25 • Have a high impact on reducing variation in health care

26 • Lead to a more efficient use of NHS resources

27 • Mean that patients reach critical points in the care pathways more
28 quickly.

29 The key priorities for implementation proposed for this guideline can be found
30 in section 1.9.1.

31

32 **1.8.16 Validation of the guideline**

33 As mentioned in section 1.8.12 the expert advisors were sent an early draft of
34 the recommendations for comments, as were a small number of other
35 healthcare professionals nominated by the GDG. These comments were

1 considered by the GDG and incorporated as appropriate for the draft of the
2 recommendations submitted for stakeholder consultation.

3 Registered stakeholders will be given the opportunity to comment on the first
4 draft of the guideline, which is posted on the NICE website. A Guideline
5 Review Panel will also review the guideline and check that stakeholders'
6 comments are addressed before the final guideline is issued in June 2007.

7

8 **1.8.17 Related NICE guidance**

9 Urinary incontinence: the management of urinary incontinence in women.
10 NICE Clinical Guideline No. 40 (2006). Available from www.nice.org.uk/CG40

11 Artificial anal sphincter. NICE Interventional Procedure Guidance No. IPG066
12 (2004). Available from www.nice.org.uk/IPG066

13 Sacral nerve stimulation for faecal incontinence. NICE Interventional
14 Procedure Guidance No. IPG099 (2004) Available from
15 www.nice.org.uk/IPG099

16 Stimulated graciloplasty for faecal incontinence. NICE Interventional
17 Procedure Guidance No. IPG159 (2006) Available from
18 www.nice.org.uk/IPG159

19 Circular stapled haemorrhoidectomy. NICE Interventional Procedure
20 Guidance No. IPG034 (2003) Available from www.nice.org.uk/IPG034

21 Percutaneous endoscopic colostomy. NICE Interventional Procedure
22 Guidance No. IPG161 (2006) Available from www.nice.org.uk/IPG161

23 NICE is developing the following guidance (details available from
24 www.nice.org.uk):

25 Irritable bowel syndrome in adults: diagnosis and management of irritable
26 bowel syndrome in primary care. NICE Clinical Guideline. (Publication
27 expected February 2008)

28 Injectable bulking agents for faecal incontinence. NICE Interventional
29 Procedure Guidance. (Publication expected Winter/Spring 2007).

30

31 **1.8.18 Updating the guideline**

32 NICE clinical guidelines are updated as needed so that recommendations
33 take into account important new information. We check for new evidence two
34 and four years after publication, to decide whether all or part of the guideline
35 should be updated. If important new evidence is published at other times, we
36 may decide to do a more rapid update of specific recommendations.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

1.9 Summary of the recommendations

1.9.1 Key priorities for implementation

People who report or are reported to have faecal incontinence should have their care managed by healthcare professionals with the relevant skills, training and experience and who work within an integrated continence service (see 'Good practice in continence services' National Service Framework for Older People(www.dh.gov.uk)).

Faecal incontinence is a socially stigmatising condition. Healthcare professionals should actively yet sensitively enquire about symptoms in the following high-risk groups:

- frail older people
- patients with loose stools or diarrhoea from any cause
- women following childbirth
- patients with neurological/spinal cord injury or disease
- patients with severe cognitive impairment
- patients with urinary incontinence
- patients with pelvic organ prolapse and/or rectal prolapse
- patients after colonic resection or anal surgery
- patients who have undergone pelvic radiotherapy
- patients with perianal soreness, itching or pain
- people with learning disabilities.

When assessing faecal incontinence healthcare professionals should:

- be aware that faecal incontinence is a symptom, often with multiple contributory factors for an individual patient
- avoid making simplistic assumptions that causation is related to a single primary diagnosis ('diagnostic overshadowing').

1 Healthcare professionals should carry out and record a focused baseline
2 assessment for patients with faecal incontinence to identify the contributory
3 factors. This should comprise:

- 4 • relevant medical history (see appendix I)
- 5 • general examination
- 6 • anorectal examination (see appendix I)
- 7 • cognitive assessment, if appropriate.

8

9 Patients with the following conditions should have these addressed with
10 condition-specific interventions before progressing to initial management of
11 faecal incontinence:

- 12 • faecal loading
- 13 • treatable causes of diarrhoea
- 14 • warning signs for lower gastrointestinal cancer (see NICE clinical
15 guideline on referral for suspected cancer (www.nice.org.uk/CG027))
- 16 • rectal prolapse or third degree haemorrhoids
- 17 • acute anal sphincter injury
- 18 • acute disc prolapse.

19

20 Initial management should address bowel habit, aiming for ideal stool
21 consistency and satisfactory bowel emptying at a predictable time.

22

23 Healthcare professionals should provide the following to symptomatic patients
24 who either do not wish to continue with active treatment or who have
25 intractable faecal incontinence:

- 26 • advice relating to the preservation of dignity and where possible
27 independence
- 28 • psychological and emotional support, possibly including referral to
29 counsellors or therapists if it seems likely that patients' attitude towards
30 their condition and their ability to manage and cope with faecal
31 incontinence could improve with professional assistance
- 32 • at least 6-monthly review of symptoms

- 1 • discussion of any other management options (including specialist
2 referral)
- 3 • contact details for relevant support groups
- 4 • advice on continence products and information about product choice,
5 availability and use
- 6 • advice on skin care
- 7 • how to talk to friends and family
- 8 • strategies such as planning routes around public conveniences if
9 patients have to travel.

10

11 Patients who continue to have episodes of faecal incontinence after initial
12 management, should be referred to a specialist continence service for
13 consideration of specialised management options which may include:

- 14 • pelvic floor re-education programmes
- 15 • bowel retraining
- 16 • specialist dietary assessment and management
- 17 • biofeedback
- 18 • electrical stimulation
- 19 • rectal irrigation.

20 These treatments may not be appropriate for patients who are unable to
21 understand and/or comply with instruction. For example, pelvic floor re-
22 education programmes may not be appropriate for those with neurological or
23 spinal disease/injury resulting in faecal incontinence due to complete loss of
24 voluntary control.

25

26 All patients considering or being considered for surgery should be referred to
27 a specialist surgeon to discuss:

- 28 • the surgical and non-surgical options appropriate for each patient
- 29 • the potential benefits and limitations of each option, with particular
30 attention to long-term results
- 31 • realistic expectations of the effectiveness of any surgical procedures
32 under consideration.

1

2 Healthcare professionals should consider a proactive approach to bowel
3 management for the following groups of patients:

- 4 • patients with neurological or spinal disease/injury resulting in faecal
5 incontinence due to complete loss of voluntary control
- 6 • patients with limited mobility
- 7 • people with faecal loading or constipation
- 8 • hospitalised patients who are acutely unwell and develop acute faecal
9 loading and associated incontinence
- 10 • patients with acquired brain injury
- 11 • patients with cognitive or behavioural issues
- 12 • people with learning disabilities.

13

14 **1.9.2 The complete list of clinical practice recommendations**

15 1.9.2.1 Good practice in managing faecal incontinence

16 People who report or are reported to have faecal incontinence should have
17 their care managed by healthcare professionals with the relevant skills,
18 training and experience and who work within an integrated continence service
19 (see 'Good practice in continence services' National Service Framework for
20 Older People (www.dh.gov.uk)).

21

22 Faecal incontinence is a socially stigmatising condition. Healthcare
23 professionals should actively yet sensitively enquire about symptoms in the
24 following high-risk groups:

- 25 • frail older people
- 26 • patients with loose stools or diarrhoea from any cause
- 27 • women following childbirth
- 28 • patients with neurological/spinal cord injury or disease
- 29 • patients with severe cognitive impairment
- 30 • patients with urinary incontinence
- 31 • patients with pelvic organ prolapse and/or rectal prolapse

- 1 • patients after colonic resection or anal surgery
- 2 • patients who have undergone pelvic radiotherapy
- 3 • patients with perianal soreness, itching or pain
- 4 • people with learning disabilities.

5

6 Coordinated public health campaigns to raise public awareness of the causes,
7 prevalence, symptoms and resources to treat faecal incontinence should be
8 carried out in order to:

- 9 • aid mutual support between people with faecal incontinence
- 10 • decrease the taboo surrounding faecal incontinence.

11

12 All staff working with people with faecal incontinence should be aware of both
13 the physical and emotional impact this symptom can have upon patients.

14

15 Healthcare professionals should ensure that people with faecal incontinence:

- 16 • are kept fully informed and have access to appropriate sources of
17 information in formats and languages that are suited to an individual's
18 requirements
- 19 • are offered access to or made aware of appropriate support groups
20 (which may be alerting patients to likelihood of family and friends
21 having similar experiences, community groups, or more formal
22 organisations). Consideration should be given to cognition, gender,
23 physical needs, culture and stage of life of the individual
- 24 • have the opportunity to discuss assessment, management options and
25 relevant physical, emotional, psychological and social issues. Patients'
26 views, experiences, attitudes and opinions about these issues should
27 be actively sought.

28

29 When assessing faecal incontinence healthcare professionals should:

- 30 • be aware that faecal incontinence is a symptom, often with multiple
31 contributory factors for an individual patient
- 32 • avoid making simplistic assumptions that causation is related to a
33 single primary diagnosis ('diagnostic overshadowing').

1

2 1.9.2.2 Baseline assessment

3 Healthcare professionals should ensure that people who report or are
4 reported to have faecal incontinence:

- 5 • receive a focused baseline assessment before any treatment is
6 considered
- 7 • receive all appropriate initial management before any specialised
8 treatment.

9

10 Healthcare professionals should carry out and record a focused baseline
11 assessment for patients with faecal incontinence to identify the contributory
12 factors. This should comprise:

- 13 • relevant medical history (see appendix I)
- 14 • general examination
- 15 • anorectal examination (see appendix I)
- 16 • cognitive assessment, if appropriate.

17

18 Patients with the following conditions should have these addressed with
19 condition-specific interventions before progressing to initial management of
20 faecal incontinence:

- 21 • faecal loading
- 22 • treatable causes of diarrhoea
- 23 • warning signs for lower gastrointestinal cancer (see NICE clinical
24 guideline on referral for suspected cancer (www.nice.org.uk/CG027))
- 25 • rectal prolapse or third degree haemorrhoids
- 26 • acute anal sphincter injury
- 27 • acute disc prolapse.

28

29 1.9.2.3 Initial management

30 Healthcare professionals should inform patients that a combination of initial
31 management interventions is likely to be needed to address faecal

1 incontinence. The specific management intervention(s) offered to patients
2 should be based on the findings from baseline assessment, tailored to
3 individual circumstances and adjusted to personal response.

4

5 *Bowel habit*

6 Initial management should address bowel habit, aiming for ideal stool
7 consistency and satisfactory bowel emptying at a predictable time.

8 A bowel habit intervention should contain the following elements:

- 9 • encouraging bowel emptying after meals (to utilise the gastro-colic
10 response)
- 11 • ensuring toilet facilities are private, comfortable and can be used in
12 safety with sufficient time allowed (see 'Essence of care'
13 (www.dh.gov.uk) and 'Behind closed doors: using the toilet in private'
14 (www.bgs.org.uk))
- 15 • teaching patients to adopt a sitting or squatting position where possible
16 while emptying the bowel
- 17 • teaching patients techniques to empty the bowel without straining.

18

19 *Diet and fluid intake*

20 Healthcare professionals should recommend a diet that promotes an ideal
21 stool consistency and predictable bowel emptying. When addressing food and
22 fluid intake healthcare professionals should:

- 23 • take into account existing therapeutic diets
- 24 • ensure that overall nutrient intake is balanced
- 25 • consider a food and fluid diary to help form a baseline
- 26 • advise patients to modify one food at a time if attempting to identify
27 potentially contributory factors (see appendices K and L)
- 28 • encourage patients with hard stool and/or clinical dehydration to aim for
29 at least 1.5 litres intake of fluid per day. Urinary output should be
30 measured where intake is in doubt
- 31 • consider the opportunity to screen patients for malnutrition, or risk of
32 malnutrition (see related NICE guideline on nutrition support
33 (www.nice.org.uk/CG032)).

34

1 *Toilet access*

2 When addressing toilet access in any home or healthcare setting:

- 3 • locations of toilets should be made clear
- 4 • equipment to help people to gain access to a toilet should be provided
- 5 • advice should be given to patients on easily removable clothing to
6 reduce time needed for access
- 7 • if patient is dependent on others for accessing the toilet, help should be
8 readily available
- 9 • privacy and dignity should be maintained at all times
- 10 • if appropriate, patients should be referred to healthcare professionals
11 for assessment of home/mobility.

12

13 *Medication*

14 When reviewing medications, healthcare professionals should consider
15 alternatives to drugs that may be contributing to faecal incontinence (see
16 appendix J).

17

18 Anti-diarrhoeal medication should be offered to patients with loose stools and
19 associated faecal incontinence once other causes for loose stools (such as
20 excessive laxative use and dietary factors) have been excluded. Anti-
21 diarrhoeal medication should be prescribed in accordance with the summary
22 of products characteristics.

23

24 Loperamide is the anti-diarrhoeal drug of first choice and can be used long-
25 term in doses from 0.5 mg to 16 mg per day or as required. Patients who are
26 unable to tolerate loperamide should be offered codeine phosphate, or co-
27 phenotrope (Lomotil ®)¹.

28

29 Loperamide should not be offered to patients with:

- 30 • hard or infrequent stools
- 31 • acute diarrhoea without a diagnosed cause

¹ Check the Summary of Products Characteristics (SPC) for current licensed indications. Informed consent is needed when using outside the licensed indications. This should be discussed and documented in the notes.

- 1 • an acute flare-up of ulcerative colitis.

2

3 When loperamide is used it should be:

- 4 • introduced at a very low dose and the dose should be escalated, as
5 tolerated by the patient until the desired stool consistency has been
6 achieved
- 7 • taken as required by the patient with faecal incontinence
- 8 • advised that patients can adjust the dose and/or frequency up or down
9 in response to stool consistency and lifestyle.

10

11 If a finer modification of dose is required loperamide syrup should be
12 considered.

13

14 *Coping strategies for symptomatic patients*

15 During assessment and initial management patients should be offered advice
16 on coping strategies including:

- 17 • continence products and information about product choice, availability
18 and use
- 19 • skin care
- 20 • where to get emotional and psychological support. In some cases
21 counselling or psychological therapy to foster acceptance and positive
22 attitudes
- 23 • how to talk to friends and family
- 24 • strategies such as planning routes around public conveniences if
25 patients have to travel.

26

27

28 Patients should be offered:

- 29 • disposable body-worn pads and disposable bed pads if needed
- 30 • pads in quantities appropriate to the individual's continence needs.
31 Arbitrary ceilings are inappropriate

- 1 • anal plugs for patients who can tolerate them
- 2 • a choice of pad styles and designs
- 3 • skin care advice; both skin cleansing and protection
- 4 • advice on odour control and laundry needs.

5

6 The use of reusable absorbent products in the management of faecal
7 incontinence is not generally recommended.

8

9 *Review of treatment*

10 After each intervention healthcare professionals should ask patients if faecal
11 incontinence has improved. Patients continuing to experience symptoms
12 should be:

- 13 • involved in discussions about further treatment options (including
14 effectiveness and adverse effects) or alternative coping strategies
- 15 • asked if they wish to try further treatments.

16

17 *Long-term management*

18 Healthcare professionals should provide the following to symptomatic patients
19 who either do not wish to continue with active treatment or who have
20 intractable faecal incontinence:

- 21 • advice relating to the preservation of dignity and where possible
22 independence
- 23 • psychological and emotional support, possibly including referral to
24 counsellors or therapists if it seems likely that patients' attitude towards
25 their condition and their ability to manage and cope with faecal
26 incontinence could improve with professional assistance
- 27 • at least 6-monthly review of symptoms
- 28 • discussion of any other management options (including specialist
29 referral)
- 30 • contact details for relevant support groups
- 31 • advice on continence products and information about product choice,
32 availability and use

- 1 • advice on skin care
- 2 • how to talk to friends and family
- 3 • strategies such as planning routes around public conveniences if
- 4 patients have to travel.

5

6 1.9.2.4 Specialised management

7 Patients who continue to have episodes of faecal incontinence after initial
8 management, should be referred to a specialist continence service for
9 consideration of specialised management options which may include:

- 10 • pelvic floor re-education programmes
- 11 • bowel retraining
- 12 • specialist dietary assessment and management
- 13 • biofeedback
- 14 • electrical stimulation
- 15 • rectal irrigation.

16 These treatments may not be appropriate for patients who are unable to
17 understand and/or comply with instruction. For example, pelvic floor re-
18 education programmes may not be appropriate for those with neurological or
19 spinal disease/injury resulting in faecal incontinence due to complete loss of
20 voluntary control.

21

22 Healthcare professionals should consider if patients with neurological or spinal
23 disease/injury (for example spinal cord injury, spina bifida, stroke, multiple
24 sclerosis) resulting in faecal incontinence, who have some residual motor
25 function and are still symptomatic after baseline assessment and initial
26 management, could benefit from specialised management.

27

28 A programme of pelvic floor re-education should be agreed with the patient.
29 The progress of patients having pelvic floor exercises should be monitored by
30 digital reassessment by an appropriately trained healthcare professional who
31 is supervising the treatment. There should be a review of patients' symptoms
32 on completion of the programme and other treatment options considered if
33 appropriate.

34

1 1.9.2.5 Specialist assessment

2 Healthcare professionals should refer patients with continuing faecal
3 incontinence after specialised conservative management for consideration for:

- 4 • anorectal physiology studies
- 5 • endoanal ultrasound. If not available, consider MRI, endovaginal
6 ultrasound and perineal ultrasound
- 7 • other tests, possibly including proctography.

8

9 1.9.2.6 Surgery

10 All patients considering or being considered for surgery should be referred to
11 a specialist surgeon to discuss:

- 12 • the surgical and non-surgical options appropriate for each patient
- 13 • the potential benefits and limitations of each option, with particular
14 attention to long-term results
- 15 • realistic expectations of the effectiveness of any surgical procedures
16 under consideration.

17

18 Patients with a full length external anal sphincter defect (with or without an
19 associated internal anal sphincter defect) and faecal incontinence which
20 restricts quality of life should be considered for sphincter repair for defects that
21 are 90° or greater. Patients should be given a realistic expectation of what this
22 operation can achieve and possible adverse events, both in the short and long
23 term.

24

25 Patients with internal sphincter defects, pudendal nerve neuropathy, multiple
26 defects, external sphincter atrophy, loose stools or irritable bowel syndrome
27 should be informed that these factors are likely to decrease the effectiveness
28 of anal sphincter repair.

29

30 Patients undergoing a sphincter repair to manage their faecal incontinence
31 should not routinely receive a temporary defunctioning stoma.

32

1 Patients undergoing anal sphincter repair should not receive constipating
2 agents in the post-operative period. Feeding should resume as required by
3 the patient.

4

5 A trial of temporary sacral nerve stimulation should be considered for patients
6 with faecal incontinence where sphincter surgery is deemed inappropriate.
7 These may be patients with intact anal sphincters, or those with sphincter
8 disruption. In those with a defect contraindications to direct repair may include
9 atrophy, denervation, a small defect, absence of voluntary contraction,
10 fragmentation of the sphincter or a poor quality muscle (see NICE
11 interventional procedure guidance on sacral nerve stimulation
12 (www.nice.org.uk/IPG099)). All patients should be informed of the potential
13 benefits and limitations of this procedure and should undergo a trial
14 stimulation period of at least 2 weeks to determine if they are likely to benefit.
15 Patients being considered for sacral nerve stimulation should be assessed
16 and managed at a specialist centre with experience of performing this
17 procedure.

18

19 If a trial of sacral nerve stimulation is unsuccessful patients can be considered
20 for a neosphincter. The two options to be considered are a dynamic
21 graciloplasty or an artificial bowel sphincter (see NICE interventional
22 procedure guidance on stimulated graciloplasty (www.nice.org.uk/IPG159)).
23 Patients should be informed of the potential benefits and limitations of both
24 procedures. Patients being considered for either procedure should be
25 assessed and managed at a specialist centre with experience of performing
26 this procedure.

27

28 Patients with an implanted sacral nerve stimulation device, dynamic
29 graciloplasty or an artificial bowel sphincter should receive training and
30 ongoing support at a specialist centre. Patients offered this procedure should
31 be informed that they may experience evacuatory disorders and/or serious
32 infection which may necessitate removal of the device. These patients should
33 be monitored, have regular reviews and be given a point of contact.

34 Antegrade irrigation via appendicostomy, neo-appendicostomy or continent
35 colonic conduit may be considered in selected patients with constipation and
36 colonic motility disorders associated with faecal incontinence.

37

38 A stoma should be considered for patients with faecal incontinence that
39 severely restricts lifestyle only once all appropriate non-surgical and surgical
40 options, including those at specialist centres, have been considered. Patients
41 should be informed of the potential benefits, risks and long-term effects of this

1 procedure. Patients assessed as a possible candidate for a stoma should be
2 referred to a stoma care service.

3

4 1.9.2.7 Specific groups

5 When assessing faecal incontinence healthcare professionals should:

- 6 • be aware that faecal incontinence is a symptom, often with multiple
7 contributory factors for an individual patient
- 8 • avoid making simplistic assumptions that causation is related to a
9 single primary diagnosis ('diagnostic overshadowing').

10

11 Healthcare professionals should consider a proactive approach to bowel
12 management for the following groups of patients:

- 13 • patients with neurological or spinal disease/injury resulting in faecal
14 incontinence due to complete loss of voluntary control
- 15 • patients with limited mobility
- 16 • people with faecal loading or constipation
- 17 • hospitalised patients who are acutely unwell and develop acute faecal
18 loading and associated incontinence
- 19 • patients with acquired brain injury
- 20 • patients with cognitive or behavioural issues
- 21 • people with learning disabilities.

22

23 *Patients with faecal loading*

24 Patients in whom acute severe faecal loading is identified as contributing to
25 faecal incontinence should initially be offered a rectally administered treatment
26 to satisfactorily clear the bowel. This will often require treatments to be
27 repeated daily for a few days. The interventions should be offered in the
28 following order, depending on tolerance and if satisfactory bowel clearance is
29 achieved:

- 30 • glycerine suppositories
- 31 • bisacodyl suppositories

- 1 • micro enemas
- 2 • phosphate enemas.

3

4 If these interventions are not appropriate and/or fail to satisfactorily clear the
5 bowel and bowel obstruction has been excluded as possible cause, a potent
6 oral laxative should be offered. Patients should be informed that oral laxatives
7 may cause griping abdominal pain, loose stools and prolonged bowel activity.
8 Toilet access should be ensured.

9

10 Healthcare professionals involved in the management of faecal incontinence
11 associated with chronic ongoing faecal loading/impaction should aim to
12 reduce the chance of recurrence by recommending a combination of initial
13 management options tailored to the individual patient (see recommendation
14 1.9.2.3). If this fails, consider use of orally administered laxatives to promote
15 bowel emptying. Rectally administered preparations should be used if use of
16 oral laxatives produces faecal incontinence episodes and there is a need to
17 produce planned bowel evacuations.

18

19 *Patients with limited mobility*

20 Patients with limited mobility who continue to have episodes of faecal
21 incontinence after initial management should be offered a regimen which will
22 produce a planned, predicted bowel action when carers are present. This may
23 be achieved by a combination of oral or rectal laxatives and/or constipating
24 agents. This regimen should also consider:

- 25 • toilet access (see recommendations in 1.9.2.3).
- 26 • appropriate disposable products (see recommendations in 1.9.2.3)
- 27 • that the stool needs to be in the rectum at the time of the planned
28 bowel action.

29 *Patients using enteral tube feeding and reporting faecal incontinence*

30 Healthcare professionals should ensure that patients reporting faecal
31 incontinence who are receiving enteral tube feeding have their type and timing
32 of feed modified on an individual basis to establish the most effective way to
33 manage faecal incontinence.

34

35 *Patients with severe cognitive impairment*

1 Patients with confirmed severe cognitive impairment should be assessed
2 using a behavioural and functional analysis to determine the nature of, and
3 reason for the behavioural presentation of faecal incontinence. Following
4 assessment, patients should be offered cause-specific interventions founded
5 on structured goal planning that aim to resolve as well as manage faecal
6 incontinence.

7

8 *Patients with neurological or spinal disease/injury*

9 Patients with neurological or spinal disease/injury resulting in faecal
10 incontinence due to complete loss of voluntary control who continue to have
11 episodes of faecal incontinence after initial management should be offered a
12 bowel management programme which aims to achieve a predictable routine
13 and avoid faecal incontinence and severe constipation. Management should
14 involve progressing through the following steps until satisfactory bowel habit is
15 established:

- 16 • ascertaining patient preferences
- 17 • ascertaining pre-morbid bowel habit, if possible
- 18 • maximising patient's understanding of normal bowel function and how it
19 has been altered
- 20 • modifying diet and/or administration of rectal evacuants and/or oral
21 laxatives, adjusted to individual response, to attempt to establish a
22 predictable pattern of bowel evacuation
- 23 • consideration of digital anorectal stimulation for patients with a spinal
24 cord injury and those with other neurogenic bowel disorders
- 25 • consideration of manual/digital removal of faeces, particularly for
26 patients with a lower spinal injury if there is a hard plug of faeces in the
27 rectum, presence of faecal impaction, incomplete defaecation, an
28 inability to defaecate and/or all other bowel emptying techniques have
29 failed to achieve bowel emptying and continence in a reasonable time.

30 Healthcare professionals should consider the following management options
31 for a patient unable to achieve reliable bowel continence after a neurological
32 bowel management programme:

- 33 • coping and long term management strategies for symptomatic patients
34 (see recommendations in 1.9.2.3)
- 35 • rectal irrigation if feasible
- 36 • a stoma or other surgical options if faecal incontinence or time taken for
37 bowel emptying imposes major limits on lifestyle.

1

2 *Other specific groups*

3 Healthcare professionals should consider a faecal collection bag for patients
4 in intensive care settings and patients receiving palliative care who report or
5 are reported with faecal incontinence and associated loose stools who are not
6 undergoing active treatment.

7

8 **1.9.3 Recommendations for research**

9 The GDG identified the following priority areas for research:

10 **The value of pelvic floor exercises in preventing and treating obstetric-**
11 **related faecal incontinence.**

12 **Development of a valid and reliable tool to measure patient-rated**
13 **outcomes including symptom severity and quality of life for people with**
14 **faecal incontinence.**

15 **Would a self-care educational programme for patients and carers**
16 **improve patient outcomes (symptom severity and quality of life)?**

17 **Does a bowel management programme for older people in care homes**
18 **improve faecal incontinence, constipation and patients' and carer's**
19 **perceptions of quality of care?**

20 **What is the prognostic value of physiologic assessment for defining**
21 **outcome of surgery for treatment of faecal incontinence?**

22

1 **2** **Good practice in managing faecal**
2 **incontinence**

3 **2.1** ***Introduction***

4 Faecal incontinence (FI) is a stigmatising condition, affecting men and women
5 of all ages. People with FI commonly experience fear and embarrassment. It
6 can have a distressing impact and restriction on quality of life; in some cases
7 people with symptoms will limit their lives in order to maintain easy access to
8 a toilet in case of an incontinence episode. Treatment of FI should aim not
9 only towards enabling the patient to live with dignity at home, but also to
10 participate in social, leisure, and cultural activities, education, training or work.

11 This chapter will outline the importance of good practice when managing FI by
12 looking at general principles of patient-centered care, specific issues
13 associated with managing FI, educational needs and finally patients' views
14 about the management methods available.

15

1 **2.2 General principles of patient-centred care**

2 Treatment and care should take account of patients' needs and preferences.
3 People with faecal incontinence should have the opportunity to make informed
4 decisions about their care and treatment, in partnership with their healthcare
5 professionals. It should be recognised that people who have had FI for a long
6 time may become experts in the management of their symptoms, if not the
7 condition as a whole. Where it is believed that patients may lack the capacity
8 to make decisions, healthcare professionals should follow the Department of
9 Health guidelines – 'Reference guide to consent for examination or treatment'
10 (2001) (available from www.dh.gov.uk). From April 2007 healthcare
11 professionals will need to follow a code of practice accompanying the Mental
12 Capacity Act (summary available from [www.dca.gov.uk/menincap/bill-](http://www.dca.gov.uk/menincap/bill-summary.htm)
13 [summary.htm](http://www.dca.gov.uk/menincap/bill-summary.htm)).

14 Treatment and care and the information patients are given about it should be
15 culturally appropriate. Information should be accessible to people with
16 additional needs such as physical, sensory, mental or learning disabilities.
17 Specialist techniques and tools should be employed to ensure that people
18 with communication difficulties have the opportunity to receive information. It
19 should be offered in a wide range of languages and formats (including face-to-
20 face, telephone-based, web-based, electronic, printed and audiotapes).
21 Specific strategies need to be put in place to meet the information and advice
22 needs of hard-to-reach groups and those who do not currently access
23 information¹⁴. Advice on the production of patient information by health
24 professionals is available from www.nhsidentity.nhs.uk. Information by itself is
25 not always enough: people should be offered one-to-one support in
26 understanding and interpreting information and what it means for them as an
27 individual.

28 Normally carers and relatives should have the opportunity to be involved in
29 decisions about the patient's care and treatment, unless the patient
30 specifically excludes them. Patients must be asked if they want carers and
31 relatives to be involved due to the sensitive nature of the condition and the
32 stigma attached. Carers and relatives should also be given the information
33 and support they need. In some cultures disclosure of FI could lead to the
34 patient being ostracised.

35

1 **2.3 Systematic review of research into patient views on**
2 **experiences and behaviour**

3 People with FI often experience social stigmatisation and exclusion, and
4 frequently suffer from stress, anxiety and depression. Many will try to hide
5 their condition, particularly if there are associated cultural /religious issues. All
6 these factors mean that there are frequently delays in people seeking help.
7 People are often too embarrassed to talk to their healthcare provider, or may
8 not know that there are treatment options available for this condition. Patients
9 and carers often develop their own strategies to deal with the condition.

10 We conducted a systematic review of research on patient' views to answer
11 questions about appropriateness, feasibility and acceptability of current
12 medical care, and also to describe patients' experiences, attitudes and
13 perceptions about living with faecal incontinence.

14

15 **2.3.1 Studies considered for this review**

16 We considered surveys, focus groups and both individual and group
17 interviews for this review. Further details of the methods for this systematic
18 review can be found in section 1.8.10.

19

20 **2.3.2 Summary of evidence**

21 Eight studies accessed the views of patients, while one study accessed those
22 of carers (evidence table 1, appendix D). In total 728 patients were
23 questioned. The majority were female patients who had already sought
24 professional help. The age range was 51–90 years. Most studies were
25 conducted in the UK, but one each was identified from Australia and the
26 United Arab Emirates. The higher-quality studies tended to examine views in
27 the context of everyday life.

28 The research is highly biased towards older female patients, and this
29 publication bias is necessarily represented in the systematic review. It is a
30 limitation of this review, which nevertheless offers a unique insight into
31 patients' lives and values, which in turn allows appropriate recommendations
32 to be developed.

33 This section will summarise the evidence on perceptions of causes of FI and
34 coping strategies identified by thematic analysis of the qualitative research
35 found in the systematic review of patients' views.

36 *Perceptions of causes of FI*

37 Causes identified within studies by patients and carers included:

- 38 • Childbirth

- 1 • Menopause
- 2 • Old age
- 3 • Paralysis
- 4 • Neurological disorders.

5 It was not always clear, however, that these causes were identified through
6 entirely open-ended questions, which may have biased results. A frequent
7 finding was the iteration that FI was all part of getting old; that it was to be
8 expected and dealt with. This stoicism may be linked to a lack of information
9 about the prevalence of FI and consequent awareness of support structures
10 and treatment and management options.

11 *Coping strategies*

12 Our review also identified a remarkably wide range of coping strategies
13 despite the small size and self-selected population of some studies. The views
14 expressed are mainly from women. Some of the strategies used may impact
15 on overall physical and mental well being, and could be described as having a
16 negative effect on overall health. This makes a comprehensive description of
17 patient behaviour and attitudes essential if effective strategies to assist
18 patients are to be developed.

19 Coping strategies were classified into four main categories, with sub-topics
20 arranged in no particular order within the boxes:

21 **A. Attitudes**

22 Taking control of one's own emotional responses to FI, managing individual
23 mental states of mind and attitudes appeared to be a common strategy in
24 coping with FI. By constructing an identity around or deciding on a particular
25 response to incontinence, patients and carers are able to find a frame of mind
26 which allows them to exert some control over their condition. The attitude held
27 by the patient, whether positive or negative, may have a knock-on effect on
28 their relationships with health professionals, carers and family.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14

Figure 1: Attitudes

Attitudes and opinions adopted

Fighting against it
Putting up with it
Learning to accept it
Humour
Denial

Considering dealing with continence as an ordinary component of family care.
Development of assertive and negotiation skills
Use of positive attitudes
Development of optimistic outlook on FI and life to facilitate coping.

B. Physical control – behavioural change

Most patients and carers stated that behavioural change was enforced upon them by their faecal incontinence. However, some of these strategies appeared to be detrimental to patients’ mental and/or physical health, and to their social, professional and personal lives.

Figure 2: Physical control

Behavioural strategies adopted

Privacy in bathroom
Restricting activity
Knowing location of toilets when out and/or planning travel around them
Moving to new home or a new job
Working
Carrying a change of clothes
Careful regulation of food input and output to enable planning of professional, social and private life
Fasting, or avoiding certain food, e.g. fruit and vegetables
Restricted travel
Self-treatment – pads, washing etc but also local or traditional remedies
Waiting for FI to resolve by itself (also given as a reason for not seeking medical help)
Curtailed exercise as often found to precipitate FI
Obsessional washing

1

2 **C. Support**

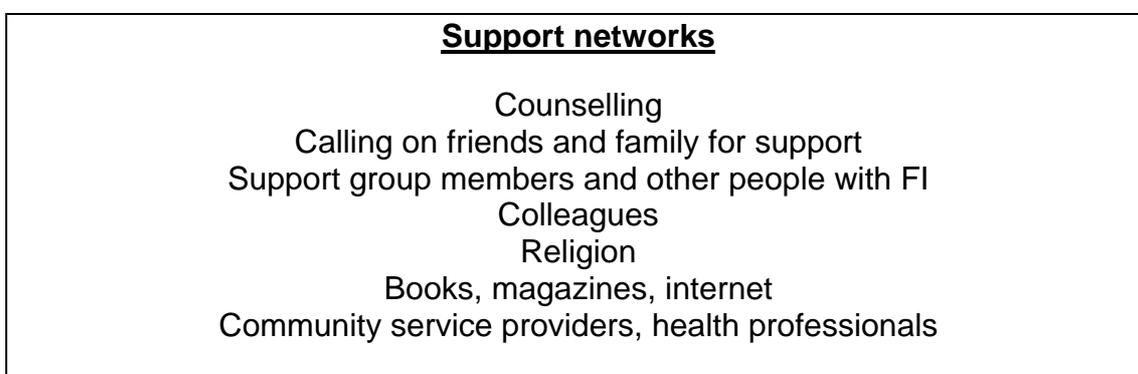
3 Patients and carers repeatedly indicated how alone and embarrassed they
4 felt. Social support networks were correspondingly narrow or non-existent.
5 Most patients said that they had concealed symptoms, but on disclosure
6 received support. It is possible that overcoming the taboo and shame
7 associated with FI would allow patients to communicate more effectively and
8 ask for support – which in most cases is willingly given, and allows FI patients
9 to cope more effectively with their condition.

10

11 Those identified by patients and carers included:

12 **Figure 3: Support**

13



14

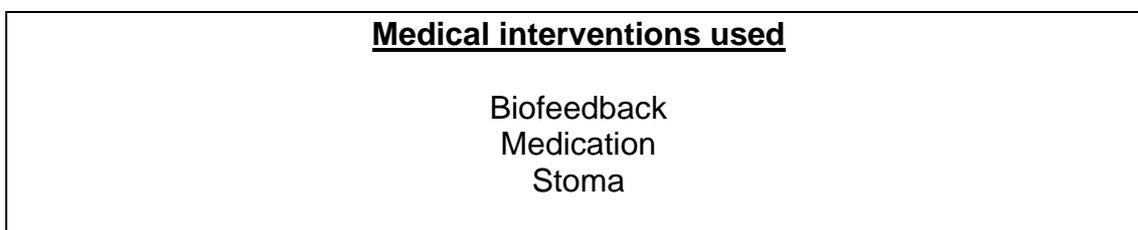
15

23 **D. Medical help**

24 An interesting finding was that very few medical interventions were identified
25 by patients and carers as potential coping strategies. Of the three mentioned
26 below, one was from a study which specifically looked at the impact of stoma
27 creation on patient experience.

28 **Figure 4: Medical care**

29



30

31

32

33

34

35

36 More general points raised about medical care by patients and carers
37 included:

- 38 • reasons for **not seeking help** include embarrassment, not wanting
39 male doctor to know, having insensitive, rude or apathetic health
40 professionals to deal with, not knowing where to go for information.

- 1 • **Perception of health professionals as not understanding** what it's
2 like to have FI, being ignorant about management techniques and the
3 whole condition. There was a general lack of confidence about health
4 professional's knowledge and a consequent loss of trust.
- 5 • All participants in one study stated they did not know where to go for
6 **advice or information about continence products**, that it was hard
7 to find, and inconsistent, that they were unaware of public support
8 networks, and also that professional assessment and advice about
9 management was available¹⁵. Suggestions for improvement made by
10 patients included: provision of detailed product information (working
11 capacity, instructions etc), also provision of general information about
12 incontinence in simple language, with better marketing and distribution
13 of information sources in general.
- 14 • Participants reported **anger at doctors** who were perceived to have
15 misdiagnosed, misinformed or performed treatment (especially surgery)
16 badly. Male doctors in particular were perceived by women as not
17 understanding clearly the consequences of FI, or more generally of
18 childbirth, and of not taking sufficient care with subsequent treatment
19 such as suturing of tears.

20

21 **2.3.3 Conclusions**

22 In conclusion, the papers identified did not appear to be representative of the
23 known demographic spread affected by faecal incontinence, and therefore
24 these are potentially biased findings. However, some clear themes arose from
25 the data, about patients' and carers' experiences and values, which have
26 been synthesised with relevant quantitative data to form recommendations
27 throughout the guideline.

28 Two major themes addressed here include the attitudes adopted by patients
29 and carers to deal with their incontinence, and the behavioural strategies
30 adopted. Both of these may be amenable to change if appropriate
31 interventions are developed, and have led to recommendations on
32 appropriate support and care for patients with FI (section 2.6.1, 2.6.2 and
33 2.6.3).

34

1 **2.4 *Systematic review on patient views of interventions*** 2 ***to manage faecal incontinence***

3 A systematic review was conducted to identify qualitative studies of patients'
4 experiences, perceptions, attitudes and opinions about methods of managing
5 faecal incontinence. Stringent inclusion and quality assessment criteria were
6 applied to the 88 studies identified. Only studies which described a piece of
7 research *primarily* accessing people's views were considered for inclusion.

8 In general, the higher-quality studies examined views in the context of
9 everyday life, whereas the low-quality studies tended to look at views in a pre-
10 and post-operative context. This is because the qualitative research was used
11 in these cases to estimate effectiveness of an intervention, rather than
12 accessing views of patients without pre-defining the terms of discussion.

13

14 **2.4.1 Summary of evidence on patient views research on specific** 15 **interventions**

16 In summary:

- 17 • No high-quality studies addressing assessment of faecal incontinence
18 were found.
- 19 • One high-quality study addressing conservative management of faecal
20 incontinence was identified¹⁵.
- 21 • Three high-quality studies soliciting views about surgery were
22 identified^{6,9,10}, one each about permanent sacral nerve stimulation
23 (SNS)¹⁰, anterior anal sphincter repair⁹, and colostomy⁶.

24 These studies are discussed in more detail within the relevant chapter for the
25 intervention(s) under consideration.

26

27 **2.4.2 Conclusions from systematic review of patient' views**

28 This guideline aims to deliver advice on the diagnosis and management of
29 faecal incontinence, including patient teaching and information, life-style
30 changes, conservative management, bowel management, biofeedback,
31 electrical stimulation, surgery and complementary therapies. As this
32 systematic review has demonstrated, qualitative research has only been
33 carried out in some of these areas. Whilst some conclusions may be drawn
34 about the effect of various interventions on patient experience and quality of
35 life, further high quality qualitative research is needed.

36

1 **2.5** ***Do any educational interventions improve outcome***
2 ***for patients with faecal incontinence?***

3 It is difficult to assess the effectiveness of any one or combination of
4 educational interventions due to many interacting variables, for example
5 disability or cultural background. Patients can obtain information from a wide
6 variety of sources. It is important to remember that patients or their carers
7 may overemphasise the positive aspects of any educational intervention
8 encountered because they feel vulnerable and many fear rejection if they give
9 negative responses.

10 **2.5.1 Studies considered for this review**

11 Randomised and non-randomised comparative study designs were
12 considered if they compared the effect of one educational intervention vs no
13 educational intervention or a difference in educational intervention.

14 **2.5.2 Clinical evidence**

15 No studies were retrieved for this clinical question.

16 **2.5.3 Cost-effectiveness evidence**

17 No studies were retrieved for this clinical question.

18 **2.5.4 Conclusions**

19 As no clinical or cost effective evidence was retrieved for this clinical question
20 the GDG used consensus development methods to propose
21 recommendations (see section 2.6.2).

1 **2.6 Recommendations**

2 **2.6.1 Active case finding**

3 **Faecal incontinence is a socially stigmatising condition. Healthcare**
4 **professionals should actively yet sensitively enquire about symptoms in**
5 **the following high-risk groups:**

- 6 • **frail older people**
- 7 • **patients with loose stools or diarrhoea from any cause**
- 8 • **women following childbirth**
- 9 • **patients with neurological/spinal cord injury or disease**
- 10 • **patients with severe cognitive impairment**
- 11 • **patients with urinary incontinence**
- 12 • **patients with pelvic organ prolapse and/or rectal prolapse**
- 13 • **patients after colonic resection or anal surgery**
- 14 • **patients who have undergone pelvic radiotherapy**
- 15 • **patients with perianal soreness, itching or pain**
- 16 • **people with learning disabilities.**

17

18 **Rationale:** These high risk groups were identified through expert opinion as
19 our literature search for this guideline did not include epidemiological
20 evidence. However, in a review of patients' views, evidence indicated that few
21 patients had experienced active enquiry about faecal incontinence or about
22 progression of the condition if it were already known that the patient was
23 incontinent (see section 2.3.2). Where healthcare professionals actively
24 identify individuals with FI, interventions and appropriate management
25 packages can be implemented.

26

27 **2.6.2 Patient support**

28 **All staff working with people with faecal incontinence should be aware**
29 **of both the physical and emotional impact that this symptom can have**
30 **upon patients.**

31 **Rationale:** As the literature review on patients views revealed, people with FI
32 can feel alienated, misunderstood and hence defensive towards healthcare

1 professionals (section 2.3.2). This may hamper good communication and
2 consequent delivery of care. The GDG wanted to emphasis the importance of
3 communication skills and patient support for healthcare professionals
4 providing treatment and care for people with FI.

5
6 **Coordinated public health campaigns to raise public awareness of the**
7 **causes, prevalence, symptoms and resources to treat faecal**
8 **incontinence should be carried out in order to:**

- 9 • **aid mutual support between people with faecal incontinence**
10 • **decrease the taboo surrounding faecal incontinence.**

11
12 **Rationale:** Although no specific effectiveness evidence on educational
13 interventions was retrieved for this guideline, the GDG wanted to address the
14 taboo surrounding faecal incontinence after considering the evidence in
15 section 2.3.2. This taboo may act as a barrier to help-seeking, both from
16 formal and informal support networks. Good information provision may directly
17 improve patient well being by reducing uncertainty, relieving stress and
18 contributing to empowerment. It may also change the pattern of service use in
19 those whose faecal incontinence requires long term management.

20

21 **Healthcare professionals should ensure that people with faecal**
22 **incontinence:**

- 23 • **are kept fully informed and have access to appropriate sources of**
24 **information in formats and languages that are suited to an**
25 **individual's requirements**
- 26 • **are offered access to or made aware of appropriate support**
27 **groups (which may be alerting patients to likelihood of family and**
28 **friends having similar experiences, community groups, or more**
29 **formal organisations). Consideration should be given to**
30 **cognition, gender, physical needs, culture and stage of life of the**
31 **individual**
- 32 • **have the opportunity to discuss assessment, management**
33 **options and relevant physical, emotional, psychological and**
34 **social issues. Patients' views, experiences, attitudes and opinions**
35 **about these issues should be actively sought.**

36 **Rationale:** As mentioned above, no specific evidence on the effectiveness of
37 educational interventions was retrieved however the GDG wanted to
38 recommend this level of support and information for patients after considering
39 the evidence discussed in section 2.3.2. Public and patient education is
40 needed regarding all aspects of faecal incontinence: prevalence, causes,
41 diagnostic investigations and the range of management, treatments and care

1 available. More specific education may be delivered at each stage of the care
2 pathway including information about what a test or investigation involves. Any
3 information provided to patients should be in the appropriate format to meet
4 the needs of the individual including the offer of support in understanding and
5 interpretation. Additional help with education may be provided by other
6 patients and carers, on a one to one basis through condition-specific or
7 general support groups, self care programmes, or specialised internet chat
8 rooms.

9 Information should be given regarding the nature of the assessment, test or
10 investigation and the efforts that will be taken to overcome any
11 embarrassment or cultural issues; also information detailing local NHS and
12 social care resources, and patient and carer organisations.

13

14

15 **2.6.3 Diagnostic overshadowing**

16 **When assessing faecal incontinence healthcare professionals should:**

- 17 • **be aware that faecal incontinence is a symptom, often with**
18 **multiple contributory factors for an individual patient**
- 19 • **avoid making simplistic assumptions that causation is related to**
20 **a single primary diagnosis ('diagnostic overshadowing').**

21

22 **Rationale:** No specific evidence to support this recommendation was
23 retrieved however, the GDG wanted to draw attention to the risk of assuming
24 that all FI symptoms are secondary to a primary diagnosis, and therefore
25 irreversible. The Disability Equality Duty¹⁶ requires health professionals to
26 take disability and consequent diagnostic overshadowing into account. This is
27 important for this guideline as many causes of FI may be unrelated to a
28 primary diagnosis. See chapter 7 for recommendations on high-risk groups.

29

30 **2.6.4 Organisation of care**

31 **People who report or are reported to have faecal incontinence should**
32 **have their care managed by healthcare professionals with the relevant**
33 **skills, training and experience and who work within an integrated**
34 **continence service (see 'Good practice in continence services', National**
35 **Service Framework for Older People (www.dh.gov.uk)).**

36 **Rationale:** No clinical questions were drafted on service organisation as it
37 was considered outside the remit of the guideline. Therefore no literature
38 searches were conducted to retrieve evidence on the effectiveness of service
39 organisational interventions. However, as access to healthcare for people with

DRAFT FOR CONSULTATION

1 faecal incontinence can be haphazard and uncoordinated the GDG decided to
2 explicitly support the recommendations made in the National Service
3 Framework for Older People regarding the organisation of care for patients
4 with FI. An integrated continence service should ensure planned referral
5 pathways between primary care, continence service specialists, and
6 colorectal, gastroenterology or other specialist care, as relevant to each
7 patient.

1 **2.7 Recommendations for research**

2 The GDG identified the following two areas for research:

3 **Would a self-care educational programme for patients and carers**
4 **improve patient outcomes (symptom severity and quality of life)?**

5 **Why this is important:**

6 Qualitative evidence suggests that mutual support groups improve patient
7 quality of life. Moreover, there is evidence to suggest that information about
8 management and treatment options are scarce, and that the taboo
9 surrounding faecal incontinence hinders help-seeking behaviour. A self-care
10 group programme to provide an integrated education and support programme
11 covering topics such as support networks, coping strategies, identifying and
12 provision of suitable products and treatments (including assessment and
13 surgery options) may aid practical care and offer increased support, improving
14 both physical and psychological outcomes.

15 In the study design patients with faecal incontinence and their carers in the
16 community receiving standard care would be compared (at regular intervals)
17 with a similar group exposed to the self-care programme. Assessed outcomes
18 could include patient-rated outcomes (including symptom severity and quality
19 of life).

20 The programme should be designed using qualitative research, patient input
21 and advice from healthcare professionals. This programme should be piloted
22 and refined after a process evaluation, incorporating views of health-care
23 professionals, qualitative research and patients as well as effectiveness data.
24 Regular refinement of the components would allow tailoring of the programme
25 to the individual needs of the group. Evidence suggests that patients should
26 benefit from mutual support and improved access to health care options, as
27 well as better awareness of available management and treatment options,
28 allowing (patients to be involved in) tailoring of individual care plans. It would
29 provide community-based healthcare, involving healthcare professionals
30 including continence specialist clinicians, clinical psychologists and integrate
31 with social care. This type of patient/carer self-care programme may reduce
32 the demand on secondary care. The views of those attending may shape
33 future health/social care by reducing the number of admissions to residential
34 care due to faecal incontinence.

35

36 **Development of a valid and reliable tool to measure patient-rated**
37 **outcomes including symptom severity and quality of life for people with**
38 **faecal incontinence.**

39 **Why this is important:**

40 Research into and treatment of faecal incontinence is hampered by the lack of
41 a valid and reliable tool which has been refined through iterative piloting and

DRAFT FOR CONSULTATION

1 consultation stages. Such a tool would allow standardisation of outcome
2 measures with which to compare results of interventions, allowing
3 effectiveness of interventions to be genuinely compared, and accurately
4 assessed.

5 Qualitative review for this guideline has highlighted paucity of information on
6 patients' views and the crudeness of current evaluation of symptoms and
7 outcomes. By involving users, healthcare providers and qualitative
8 researchers in the design of a tool, the most relevant outcomes (to all groups)
9 would be measured, including symptom severity and quality of life. Each
10 group would bring different perspectives to the tool which would ensure that
11 all relevant topics are covered and that the tool is useful to all groups.

12

1 **3 Baseline assessment and initial management**
2 **of faecal incontinence**

3 Faecal incontinence is a distressing disorder, which may occur at any age; it
4 affects both males and females. There are many causes and it is important to
5 assess patients carefully to determine the optimal management pathway. This
6 guidance has been divided into 'baseline' and 'specialist' assessment and
7 'initial' and 'specialised' management. The aim of this chapter is to provide an
8 initial baseline strategy that will be effective for the many patients in primary
9 and secondary care who might not need to progress onto the specialist
10 assessment and specialised management options.

1

2 **3.1 Baseline assessment introduction**

3 Once patients have presented with a history of faecal incontinence, the
4 majority never undergo formal functional and structural assessment of
5 anorectal function. Such testing is likely only to be accessible through referral
6 to a specialist. For many patients, a thorough basic assessment will provide
7 enough information for the clinician to recommend an initial management
8 strategy without recourse to more formal testing.

9 For the purposes of this guideline, we defined baseline assessment to include
10 structured assessment, clinician examination and patient reporting of
11 symptoms.

12 We undertook literature searches to retrieve RCTs, non-randomised
13 controlled trials, cohort studies and before-after studies which measured the
14 effect of performing an assessment vs not performing an assessment on
15 patient outcomes. As only a small number of studies which met our inclusion
16 criteria were retrieved for this section, we searched for assessment studies
17 with an appropriate 'gold standard' to help inform the clinical questions.

18

19

1

2 **3.2 *What does a structured assessment add to the***
3 ***assessment of patients with faecal incontinence?***

4 A step-by-step assessment should include a detailed history of the presenting
5 complaint and physical examination. It should focus any further investigations,
6 and therefore has the potential to avoid unnecessary procedures.

7

8 **3.2.1 Studies considered for this review**

9 A structured assessment was defined as an assessment protocol for patients
10 reporting faecal incontinence which was designed to assess the contributing
11 factors of FI and/or plan and manage their care.

12

13 **3.2.2 Clinical evidence**

14 We did not retrieve any appropriate studies.

15

16 **3.2.3 Cost-effectiveness evidence**

17 We did not retrieve any appropriate studies.

18

19 **3.2.4 Conclusions**

20 As no clinical or cost-effective evidence was retrieved for this clinical question
21 the GDG used consensus development methods to propose a
22 recommendation (see section 3.14).

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41

3.3 What does clinician examination add to the assessment of the patient with faecal incontinence?

A physical examination is an important part of the assessment and is key to the management of faecal incontinence. It complements the history given by the patient, assists in excluding organic disease which might be the underlying cause of the symptoms and directs any subsequent investigations according to specific indications.

3.3.1 Studies considered for this review

Clinician examination was considered to cover visual and digital anorectal examination; abdominal and general assessment; neurological examination, clinical assessment and clinician evaluated symptom assessment.

3.3.2 Clinical evidence

We retrieved two diagnostic studies^{17,18} that reported the diagnostic accuracy of clinical assessment (which usually encompassed history, general examination and anorectal examination) (evidence table 2, appendix D). Keating et al¹⁷ used a combination of imaging and functional tests (referred to as 'special investigations') as a gold standard, while histology was used as the reference standard in Sultan et al¹⁸.

Keating et al¹⁷ report the sensitivity and specificity of clinical assessment for outcomes in patients referred to a specialist centre for assessment of faecal incontinence (N=50). Outcomes measured were structural damage to the sphincter and presence of associated causes of faecal incontinence (for example, rectal prolapse, haemorrhoids/local anal causes and rectocele). The outcomes sensitivities for clinical assessment ranged from 64–100% and the specificities ranged from 94–100% compared to 'special investigations'. Sultan et al¹⁸ reports that both the sensitivity (56%) and specificity (33%) of detection of external sphincter defects by clinical assessment is poor in patients selected for surgical repair (N=12).

Both studies were focused on whether clinical examination could predict structural sphincter integrity. This only has relevance in the specialist setting where surgery is contemplated, which will seldom be the first option for management in the newly presenting patient. Therefore, the significance only becomes relevant at the specialist stage of investigations. The findings reported by Keating et al¹⁷ suggest that inspection is as good as imaging at detecting vaginal or rectal prolapse. The results of both studies however should be interpreted with caution. As the study reported by Keating et al¹⁷ took place in a specialist referral centre, it is not clear that the results can be replicated in a non-specialist setting. In addition, both studies are small and in

1 the case of Sultan et al¹⁸, was undertaken in a highly selected group of
2 patients.

3 Please note: studies reporting the diagnostic accuracy of digital examination
4 vs manometry are reported in section 5.4.3.

5

6 **3.3.3 Cost-effectiveness evidence**

7 We did not retrieve any appropriate studies.

8

9 **3.3.4 Conclusions**

10 In addition to the two studies reported here, studies discussed in section 5.5.3
11 suggest that a significant proportion of patients who only receive clinical
12 assessment may be inadvertently referred for the wrong surgical treatment.
13 This suggests that in patients with faecal incontinence who are referred to
14 specialist centres, clinical assessment alone cannot be relied upon to inform
15 decisions on surgical options. However, in the initial management phase,
16 clinical assessment is probably sufficient to determine which patients should
17 be fast-tracked for specialist referral and which can proceed with initial
18 management strategies. Recommendations on baseline assessment can be
19 found in section 3.14.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25

3.4 *What does patient-reporting add to the assessment of the patient with faecal incontinence?*

A patient-centred approach is desirable, and quantification of the severity of symptoms experienced by patients is also valuable as an outcome measure of treatment. Despite being a subjective measure, the patient's perception of faecal incontinence is central to the management of this condition, which aims to improve the overall quality of a patient's life.

3.4.1 Studies considered for this review

Patient reporting was defined as any type of record or score which was completed by the patient (for example, symptom scores, diaries, questionnaires).

3.4.2 Clinical evidence

We did not retrieve any appropriate studies.

3.4.3 Cost-effectiveness evidence

We did not retrieve any appropriate studies.

3.4.4 Conclusions

As no clinical or cost-effective evidence was retrieved for this clinical question the GDG used expert opinion and consensus development methods to propose recommendations for baseline assessment. These can be found in section 3.14.

1

2 **3.5 *Research on patient views of assessment***

3 A systematic review of patients' views about assessment and conservative
4 management was undertaken. No high-quality studies were retrieved about
5 baseline assessment.

6

1 **3.6** *Initial management introduction*

2 Initial management will involve attempting to reverse or remedy factors
3 identified as contributing to FI in the baseline assessment. Most are simple,
4 low cost interventions which have a low potential to do harm. This may include
5 addressing the patient's fluid intake, diet and medication, giving medication
6 and addressing bowel habit and toilet access. Many patients will benefit from
7 a combination of these measures. Products for containment and skin care
8 advice should also be available for initial management purposes.

9 We undertook literature searches to retrieve RCTs, non-randomised
10 controlled trials, cohort studies and before-after studies which compared the
11 effect of one conservative intervention with another conservative intervention
12 on patient outcomes.

1

2 **3.7 *What is the effectiveness of modifying diet or fluid***
3 ***intake in managing faecal incontinence?***

4

5 **3.7.1 Introduction**

6 Some foods and drinks have components that are likely to alter bowel habit or
7 stool consistency. The aim of dietary and fluid intervention is to promote a
8 regimen that helps maintain an appropriate stool consistency and timing of
9 defaecation. Many patients report clinically that the timing of food intake is
10 important and eating triggers the gastro-colic response and a consequent call
11 to stool. Many alter their diet or restrict intake in an effort to limit FI¹⁹.

12 Some foods (for example, prunes, figs and rhubarb) contain naturally
13 occurring laxative compounds. Artificial sweeteners such as sorbitol and other
14 non-absorbable sugars also have laxative properties. There is a growing
15 interest in the possible value of probiotics ('good bowel bacteria') and
16 prebiotics (the foodstuffs that allow these bacteria to multiply in the bowel):
17 these are currently classified as foods (rather than drugs) in the UK.

18 Many older and/or disabled patients have FI as a result of faecal impaction of
19 hard stool with overflow leakage. Fibre in food or as supplements is often
20 recommended, but must be used with great caution in individuals who have
21 impaction or limited mobility and could, in theory, worsen symptoms.

22 This section reviews the evidence for any systematic change in content or
23 timing for diet or fluids in managing FI.

24

25 **3.7.2 Studies considered for this review**

26 We considered RCTs, non-randomised controlled trials, cohort studies and
27 before-after studies. We considered fibre supplements or restriction,
28 probiotics, prebiotics, synbiotics, sorbitol, fructose, modification of eating
29 patterns, any combination of dietary interventions and comparison of the
30 effect of one method of modifying food or fluid intake with another method.

31

32 **3.7.3 Clinical evidence**

33 One randomised study²⁰ involving 39 adult volunteers with faecal incontinence
34 and loose stool (13 in each of the three arms), evaluated the effects of a fibre
35 supplement containing psyllium (metamucil), gum arabic or a placebo (0.25g
36 of pectin/day) for 31 days (evidence table 3, appendix D). The dose reported
37 for psyllium and gum arabic was 25g/day but they also report that the dose
38 was progressively increased over the first 6 days of supplementation to

1 decrease the risk of flatus and worsening faecal incontinence (but the study
2 does not mention what this progressive increase was). The fibre or placebo
3 was mixed in 360 ml of half strength fruit juice and divided into two servings to
4 be ingested at the morning and evening meal. The baseline period was eight
5 days prior to the intervention. The intervention lasted 31 days and follow-up
6 was until the end of the intervention. Three subjects from the psyllium group,
7 two from gum arabic and three from the placebo group took and maintained
8 some type of anti-diarrhoeal medications (atropine chloride, loperamide
9 hydrochloride, bismuth subsalicylate or kaolin pectin) during both periods. The
10 proportion of stools that were incontinent in the groups ingesting fibre
11 supplements during the intervention period was less than half that of the
12 placebo group (psyllium group: 0.17 ± 0.07 ; gum arabic group: 0.18 ± 0.07 ;
13 placebo group: 0.50 ± 0.05 ; $p= 0.002$). However, this probably overstates the
14 significance since the sample size was too small for the chosen statistical
15 method (ANOVA). Outcomes for stool frequency, weight of stools, fibre
16 fermentation and tolerance and in vitro fibre fermentation did not show
17 significant differences between groups.

18 One randomised cross-over trial was identified²¹ (evidence table 5, appendix
19 D). This study comprised of 47 adult patients referred to an outpatient service
20 with chronic faecal incontinence. The patients were randomised to
21 loperamide, dietary advice for a low residue diet and placebo supplement or to
22 loperamide, dietary advice for a balanced diet with a fibre supplement. Each
23 intervention was assessed for six weeks and then crossed over to the other
24 intervention. The results of this study²¹ found that there was no significant
25 difference between loperamide with a fibre supplement compared with
26 loperamide with a low residue diet and a placebo supplement for faecal
27 incontinence scores.

28 No appropriate evidence was found comparing different fluid intakes.

29

30 **3.7.4 Cost-effectiveness evidence**

31 No cost-effectiveness evidence was found.

32

33 **3.7.5 Conclusions**

34 One small RCT suggests that dietary supplementation with psyllium or gum
35 arabic appeared to decrease the percentage of incontinent stools in people
36 with faecal incontinence related to loose stools. Another larger RCT²¹ found
37 no difference between patients receiving loperamide with a low residue diet or
38 with a fibre supplement. However, marked variability was found between
39 individual patient results indicating that an individual assessment of fibre
40 content could be beneficial for patients treated with loperamide. The
41 recommendations on diet and fluid intake can be found in section 3.15.2.

42

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37

3.8 What is the effectiveness of modifying drug administration in managing FI?

3.8.1 Introduction

Anti-diarrhoeal Medication

Patients will typically receive medication to treat faecal incontinence (FI) at one of two extremes of the clinical pathway – either as a first step in primary care or as part of a deliberate plan of management by a specialist. In either context it may represent the sole treatment option, or be an adjuvant part of another therapy. Anti-diarrhoeal medication is suitable for empirical use in primary care and for specialist use. In fact, in the former situation, it could be argued that failure to respond to these medications should be the precursor to specialist referral and functional assessment.

One advantage of the use of loperamide in particular (but also co-phenotrope) is that the drug(s) can be used as both regular treatment, but also on an as-required basis. The drugs are usually used as single agents for routine treatment of faecal incontinence.

Sphincter modifying drugs

A novel development is the use of medication to alter the performance of the anal sphincter mechanism, primarily targeted at raising sphincter pressures. These drugs remain developmental at present and none has reached the general drug tariff.

Drugs to promote bowel emptying

Some patients have faecal incontinence secondary to faecal loading or constipation. Laxatives or rectal evacuants may be used to promote complete rectal emptying.

Side effects of other medications

Many different drugs, usually prescribed for unrelated conditions, have possible side-effects on gut motility or stool consistency. For example, some diabetic oral therapies achieve effect by inducing diarrhoea, which in theory could compromise continence. Iron supplements and non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs may cause loose stool in some patients. Many analgesics have constipating side-effects. Changing medications or modifying the regimen may alter episodes of FI in these patients.

Fibre studies

Changes in fibre intake may be achieved by changing diet or use of fibre supplements.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41

3.8.2 Studies considered for this review

We considered RCTs, non-randomised controlled trials, cohort studies and before-after studies which compared the effectiveness of one drug with placebo, no drugs or another drug.

Two studies^{20,21} were retrieved reporting the use of fibre at managing FI. These studies are discussed in section 3.7.3.

One study²² was retrieved that used a combination of anti-diarrhoeal medication and laxatives or enemas in a nursing home environment. This study is discussed in section 7.1.3.

3.8.3 Clinical evidence for anti-diarrhoeal/constipating agents

Three randomised crossover studies met our inclusion criteria²³⁻²⁵ (evidence table 4, appendix D). Read et al investigated the effectiveness of 6 mg of loperamide twice per day in 26 adults with persistent diarrhoea for more than 3 months, who complained of episodes of FI and severe urgency sufficient to limit their life style²³. There were a variety of causes of incontinence with irritable bowel syndrome in 11 of the 26 being the most common. This study showed a significant reduction in the episodes of incontinence and urgency during the use of loperamide, but with an increase in the number of adverse events²³.

Sun et al investigated the effectiveness of 4 mg of loperamide oxide twice per day in 11 adults with chronic diarrhoea and faecal incontinence²⁴. Any participant with a volume of diarrhoea greater than 500 ml per day was excluded from this study. The cause of FI was irritable bowel syndrome in nine of the participants and as a consequence of surgery in the other two participants. This study used a patient rated visual analogue score for measuring diarrhoea and FI²⁴. There was a significant reduction in the score for diarrhoea and urgency during use of loperamide oxide but no significant difference in the score for FI or abdominal pain.

Hallgren et al²⁵ compared the effectiveness of loperamide hydrochloride with a placebo in a randomised crossover study of 28 participants with FI who had had ileo-anal pouch formation for ulcerative colitis. The covering stoma had been closed between 6 and 72 months previously. Twenty-four of the 30 participants had been using loperamide before entry into the study. The study showed that the use of loperamide several months after ileo-anal pouch formation improved anal resting pressure but not maximal squeeze pressure. The study also showed that the incidence of soiling at night was significantly less in the loperamide group compared to the placebo ($p=0.007$). There was no significant difference in soiling or leakage during the day.

1 **3.8.4 Cost-effectiveness evidence for anti-diarrhoeal agents**

2 No cost-effectiveness evidence was found.

3

4 **3.8.5 Conclusions**

5 There is a lack of evidence of good quality data on the effectiveness of anti-
6 diarrhoeal agents on faecal incontinence. Loperamide may help improve a
7 patient's faecal incontinence but with some minor side effects.

8 Recommendations on initial management can be found in section 3.14.

9

10 **3.8.6 Clinical evidence for drugs enhancing sphincter tone**

11 Three randomised crossover studies were identified (evidence table 4,
12 appendix D). The first two studies investigated a 10% gel of phenylephrine. In
13 one study²⁶ the 12 participants had had an ileoanal pouch constructed for
14 ulcerative colitis between 1 and 13 years previously. The episodes of faecal
15 incontinence had been present for a similar amount of time.

16 In the other study²⁷ the 36 participants had passive FI and a structurally intact
17 sphincter. The episodes of FI had been present for a mean of 5 years. In both
18 studies, patients who were using loperamide before the study were permitted
19 to continue using it during the trial as it had not controlled the episodes of FI.
20 The order of interventions was randomised; they were given one intervention
21 for 4 weeks after which there was a 1 week washout period before the next
22 intervention. There were no side effects from phenylephrine reported for one
23 study²⁶. The other study reported mild dermatitis in three of the 36 participants
24 when receiving the phenylephrine gel and no dermatitis when receiving the
25 placebo²⁷. The difference was not significant and no other side effects were
26 reported. One study²⁷ showed no significant difference between
27 phenylephrine and placebo in the change of incontinence score, percentage
28 improvement in symptom scores or maximum anal resting pressure in patients
29 with 'idiopathic' FI. The study²⁶ in patients with FI and an ileoanal pouch
30 showed significantly more participants with a complete cessation of FI when
31 receiving the phenylephrine gel (four compared to none) and more
32 participants perceiving the gel to be better, but the difference was not
33 significant. Incontinence and symptom scores were only reported for the first
34 treatment period because the authors felt the washout period between
35 interventions was not sufficient. The maximum anal resting pressure was
36 significantly higher in the phenylephrine group. This medication is not licensed
37 for this in the UK.

38 Kusunoki et al²⁸ conducted a randomised cross over study with a total of 17
39 adult patients with ulcerative colitis (n=8) or adenomatosis coli (n=9) which
40 had been previously treated with surgical construction of an ileoanal pouch.
41 Patients were randomised to sodium valproate 400 mg four times a day for 7
42 days or placebo for 7 days. The results of the study (follow up 17 days)

1 showed that more people achieved full continence, less frequent defaecation,
2 and less perianal skin problems with sodium valproate; however the
3 significance was not reported. This medication is not licensed for FI in the UK.

4

5 **3.8.7 Cost-effectiveness evidence for drugs enhancing sphincter** 6 **tone**

7 No cost-effectiveness evidence was found.

8

9 **3.8.8 Conclusions on drugs enhancing sphincter tone**

10 Phenylephrine gel showed no impact on incontinence scores and resting anal
11 pressure in faecally incontinent patients (not related to irritable bowel
12 syndrome) with a structurally intact sphincter. However, the evidence
13 available was only from one study of 36 participants. Phenylephrine gel may
14 relieve incontinence in faecally incontinent patients who had previously had an
15 ileoanal pouch and had tried loperamide without success. Recommendations
16 on modifying drug administration can be found in section 3.15.4.

17

18 **3.8.9 Clinical evidence for side effects of other drugs**

19 No clinical evidence was retrieved.

20

21

1 **3.9** ***What is the effectiveness of any combination of***
2 ***dietary, fluid or drug administration in managing FI?***

3 **3.9.1 Introduction**

4 In clinical practice, dietary, fluid and drug regimens may all be modified at the
5 same time or in combination.

6

7 **3.9.2 Studies considered for this review**

8 We considered RCTs, non-randomised controlled trials, cohort studies and
9 before-after studies for inclusion which compared one combination of
10 modifying food, liquid and drug administration with a different combination of
11 modifying food, liquid and drug administration or no intervention.

12

13 **3.9.3 Clinical evidence**

14 No clinical evidence was retrieved.

15

16 **3.9.4 Cost-effectiveness evidence**

17 We did not retrieve any appropriate studies.

18

19 **3.9.5 Conclusions**

20 As no clinical or cost-effective evidence was retrieved for this clinical question
21 the GDG used consensus development methods to propose a
22 recommendation (section 3.15).

23

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37

3.10 *What are the most effective products (absorbent products, containment and plugs) to manage faecal incontinence?*

3.10.1 Introduction

People experiencing faecal incontinence often need to wear a product (absorbent product or plug) for containment. This may be before consulting a health professional to assess their symptoms. Frequently a product will be worn 'just in case' an episode of FI is experienced. Once the problem has been assessed it is likely that management other than products for containment will be initiated. In addition, products will often still be worn to boost self-confidence or when the FI is not amenable to treatment.

Disposable, absorbent products are more suitable and preferable to washable products. Soiling of clothing and loss of solid stool can usually be contained within underwear and pads, but it is difficult to contain profuse diarrhoea or hide unpleasant odours. This should usually be preventable by planning better bowel management programmes.

There are many different treatments for FI but not all patients can be cured and some are left to manage intractable FI. Devices such as anal plugs or faecal collectors have limited use, and are generally only acceptable to certain populations. Although anal plugs are not tolerated by all patients, they may be helpful in preventing FI in selected groups, such as patients with neurological impairment who have less anal sensation. Both the anal plug and faecal collectors may possibly be of help in palliative care; the collector in situations where a patient has acute profuse diarrhoea (for example in intensive care situations).

3.10.2 Studies considered for this review

We considered randomised controlled trials, randomised crossover studies or systematic reviews of randomised controlled trials and/or randomised crossover studies, non-randomised controlled trials, before and after studies and cohort studies which compared: the effectiveness of absorbent products or anal plugs with no intervention; one type of absorbent product with another; or one type of anal plug with another. The review for this clinical question included studies of incontinent patients even if the proportion with faecal incontinence was less than 50% or unknown.

1 **3.10.3 Clinical evidence**

2 Four randomised studies evaluating absorbent products were identified: two
3 investigated doubly incontinent patients^{29,30}, one investigated people with
4 urinary, faecal or double incontinence³¹ and the last did not specify the type of
5 incontinence³² (evidence table 5, appendix D). No studies in just faecally
6 incontinent participants were identified. Two of the studies compared
7 disposable with reusable absorbent products^{29,32}, one compared diapers with
8 underpads in hospitalised patients³¹ and one compared absorbent pads with
9 undersheets in bedridden older patients³⁰.

10 *Disposable vs reusable body worn products*

11 One study showed that participants using the disposable products (n=34) had
12 significantly better skin assessment scores and significantly more participants
13 with an improvement in skin condition than those using reusable (n=34)
14 products²⁹. The reusable products were worn during the day but taken off at
15 night. However, the mean number of episodes per day of urinary incontinence
16 (6.7) was higher than the mean number of episodes per day of faecal
17 incontinence (1.2). This could mean that disposable pads have an effect in
18 patients with urinary incontinence but it is difficult to assess whether they have
19 an effect in FI. The other study showed no difference in skin condition³².
20 There was no indication as to the type of incontinence these participants had.

21 *Bodyworn products vs underpads/bedsheets*

22 A single RCT³¹ of 166 adult incontinent patients at an acute hospital
23 compared five different absorbent products. The randomised comparison was
24 between diapers and underpads. However, there were also cross-over period
25 comparisons within each randomised arm between polymer and non-polymer
26 products. And in one centre cloth underpads were used instead of disposable
27 for the entire study period. Skin integrity scores were reported by assessing
28 five skin areas for redness, integrity and patient symptoms. Points assigned in
29 each in a ranked order where 0 represented no alteration or symptoms. Mean
30 skin integrity scores were significantly different between the five arms for
31 redness ($p=0.0001$) and integrity ($p=0.003$), with the polymer diaper having
32 the best outcome. Mean skin integrity scores for patient symptoms were not
33 significantly different between the groups. There was no significant difference
34 in skin integrity scores when comparing diapers with underpads.

35 Only 29% of the participants were routinely doubly incontinent and it is not
36 clear how many of the new onset patients would have had FI, UI or both. The
37 difference between the episodes of faecal and urinary incontinence was not
38 recorded and no results were provided for the FI sub-group. Therefore it is
39 difficult to draw any conclusions as to the effect of these products on
40 participants with FI.

41 *Absorbent bed pads vs cotton bedsheets*

42 One randomised cross-over study³⁰ compared three interventions: absorbent
43 bed pads, absorbent bed pads impregnated with an antimicrobial agent and

1 heavy cotton bed pads (N=32). Participants using the unimpregnated
2 absorbent bed pads had significantly fewer incidences of wet skin than the
3 group using the bed pads. They also had significantly fewer incidences of dry
4 skin and more incidences of damp skin than the heavy cotton bed pads group;
5 however, this was believed to be as a result of perspiration. These outcomes
6 were heavily influenced by the urinary incontinence.

7

8 *Anal plugs*

9 One Cochrane review was identified with four studies³³ (evidence table 5,
10 appendix D). Two studies^{34,35} were in children and were therefore out of scope
11 of the guideline. The two other studies included adults. One study looked at
12 both children and adults. Some data was available for adults alone but due to
13 recruitment problems the target of 2:1 randomisation between groups was not
14 achieved, with three times as many adults in the intervention arm. The other
15 had a high dropout rate and incomplete data. Both studies were excluded
16 from our review.

17

18 **3.10.4 Cost-effectiveness evidence**

19 The approach taken was the same as for the review of clinical evidence –
20 because of the lack of relevant studies; we included studies of incontinent
21 patients even if the proportion with faecal incontinence was less than 50% or
22 unknown. We found three economics studies that evaluated incontinence
23 containment products (evidence table 8, appendix D).

24 One study³⁶ was based on a matched-pair RCT of 68 elderly care home
25 residents with urinary and/or faecal incontinence comparing disposable with
26 re-usable bodyworn. They found the cost of disposables to be lower (product
27 and laundry costs), although not significantly so (£1.90 vs £2.30 per day).
28 There was an improvement in skin quality in the disposable arm compared
29 with deterioration in the reusable arm. This suggests that disposable
30 dominates reusable, although the proportion of patients with FI was not
31 reported.

32 A second RCT³⁷ of 166 adult incontinent patients at an acute hospital
33 compared five different absorbent products. The randomised comparison was
34 between diapers and underpads. However, there were also cross-over period
35 comparisons within each randomised arm between polymer and non-polymer
36 products; and in one centre, cloth underpads were used instead of disposable
37 for the entire study period. There were not significant differences between the
38 randomized arms. They found polymer underpads dominated nonpolymer
39 underpads; that is, the former had similar skin scores and a lower cost
40 (products, staff time and laundry) (£2.40 vs £3.20 per clean-up episode).
41 Polymer diapers were more effective than nonpolymer diapers but at an
42 increased cost (£3.10 vs £2.80). It is difficult to assess whether the health gain
43 justifies the increased cost since health outcomes were not measured in terms

1 of QALYs. A limitation of this study is that it does not clearly report the
2 proportion of patients with *faecal* incontinence.

3 A Cochrane review³⁸ conducted in the UK developed an economic evaluation
4 from a systematic review of RCTs, which included the two studies just
5 mentioned and four others. They made the general conclusion that disposable
6 products were more effective but more costly than nondisposable products,
7 however, disposable bodyworn had the lowest cost for strategies other than
8 nondisposable underpads. Patients had significantly fewer skin complaints for
9 disposable bodyworn compared to nondisposable bodyworn and had a
10 lower cost. This suggests that disposable bodyworn dominate nondisposable
11 bodyworn, although disposal costs were not measured. There was not
12 enough evidence to compare bodyworn with underpads.

13 The two RCTs were conducted in a US setting where care pathways and
14 prices are often very different to those in the UK NHS, although the UK
15 Cochrane review reached similar conclusions using UK prices.

16

17 **3.10.5 Conclusions**

18 No evidence was found to determine whether absorbent products were
19 effective in containing faecal incontinence. Some evidence exists for
20 participants with both faecal and urinary incontinence but the results appear to
21 be biased by the urinary incontinence. No good quality randomised evidence
22 of the effectiveness of anal plugs in adults was found.

23 Cost-effectiveness: It is difficult to assess whether the health gain from
24 disposable products is high enough to justify the extra cost. One study
25 suggested that disposable bodyworn could be cost-saving compared with
26 nondisposable bodyworn.

27 Recommendations on products can be found in section 3.15.5.

28

29

30

1 **3.11** ***What are the most effective skin care products to***
2 ***manage faecal incontinence?***

3 **3.11.1** **Introduction**

4 The majority of people with faecal incontinence (FI) do not experience regular
5 sore skin around the anus. However, certain patients seem to be prone to this,
6 for example those with general frailty, immobility, poor health, continuous
7 passive soiling or profuse diarrhoea. Patients with double incontinence may
8 experience sore skin as urine and faeces can interact, resulting in a moist
9 environment in the anal area. Other contributing factors include skin
10 conditions, diabetes mellitus and patients who have had their colon removed,
11 so that the stool which leaks is ileal contents.

12 In such circumstances, if no products are used on the patient's skin there may
13 be redness, soreness and even skin breakdown which can contribute to the
14 development of a pressure sore. Keeping the skin clean and dry is important
15 in maintaining skin integrity. In residential settings, staff adherence to skin
16 care protocols is essential to maintain patients' skin integrity.

17 **3.11.2** **Studies considered for this review**

18 RCTs, non-randomised controlled trials, cohort studies and before-after
19 studies which compared: the effectiveness of skin care products with no
20 intervention or one type of skin care product with another were retrieved for
21 this review. The populations included were adults with faecal incontinence.
22 This included people with double incontinence (that is, with urinary and faecal
23 incontinence).

24 **3.11.3** **Clinical evidence**

25 Two randomised controlled trials were identified^{39,40} (evidence table 7,
26 appendix D). Both were in long term elderly hospital or nursing home patients.
27 A foam cleanser was compared to water in one study where participants
28 (N=93) were predominantly doubly incontinent⁴⁰. Two creams (Sudocrem and
29 zinc oxide) were compared in the other study³⁹. Although the type of
30 incontinence was not reported the 67 participants appear to have had some
31 faecal incontinence.

32 Using a foam cleanser compared to soap and water resulted in significantly
33 more participants retaining healthy skin and significantly fewer participants
34 with a deterioration in skin condition after two weeks of intervention⁴⁰. Using
35 Sudocrem resulted in a significant reduction in skin redness after 1 week and
36 2 weeks of treatment when compared to a zinc oxide cream.

37

1 **3.11.4 Cost-effectiveness evidence**

2 The approach taken was the same as for the review of clinical evidence –
3 because of the lack of relevant studies, we included studies of incontinent
4 patients even if the proportion with faecal incontinence was less than 50% or
5 unknown. We found three economics studies that evaluated incontinence
6 cleansing products (evidence table 8, appendix D).

7 A study of 12 elderly care home residents with FI⁴¹ found that a no-rinse
8 incontinence cleanser reduced carer time and costs (by £15 per patient per
9 week) compared with soap and water. The study was based on a subgroup of
10 patients from a cohort study, but its design and sample size were not clearly
11 stated. Health outcomes were not reported for the FI subgroup that was the
12 subject of the costing analysis.

13 The second study⁴² involved a case series of 19 elderly care home residents
14 with FI. They found that a combined cleanser and barrier cream dominated
15 separate cleanser and barrier cream; the former significantly reduced
16 erythema and pain. Carer time was also reduced and subsequently so were
17 costs by £85 per patient per year. The before and after study design is clearly
18 open to bias and this was compounded by the absence of statistical analysis
19 for carer time or cost.

20 A third study⁴³ evaluated 271 elderly care home residents with urinary and/or
21 faecal incontinence in four cohorts undergoing different skin care
22 interventions. Cost of product and staff time was substantially lower for a
23 barrier film than for either of two brands of ointment (£1.10-£2.70 vs £6.00-
24 £6.10 per week). There was no significant difference in incontinence
25 dermatitis (3.0%-3.9% vs 2.6%) but the incidence was low and therefore the
26 study was too small to detect a difference. Thrice weekly use of the film was,
27 not surprisingly, less costly than once daily (£1.10 vs £2.70).

28 All three studies were in a US setting where care pathways and prices are
29 often very different to those in the UK NHS.

30

31 **3.11.5 Conclusions**

32 Foam cleanser was better than soap and water in preventing skin
33 deterioration in doubly incontinent elderly hospital or nursing home residents.
34 Sudocrem improved skin condition over two weeks compared to a zinc oxide
35 cream in incontinent elderly hospital patients. However, the study gave no
36 indication what proportion of the participants had faecal incontinence.

37 Cost-effectiveness: Three poor quality studies indicated:

- 38 a. Non-rinse incontinence cleanser was cost-effective
- 39 b. Combined cleanser and barrier was cost-effective compared with
40 separate products

DRAFT FOR CONSULTATION

- 1 c. A barrier film was cost-effective compared with ointments.
- 2 Recommendations on skin care can be found in section 3.15.5.

1

2 **3.12** ***What is the best practice goal setting (including***
3 ***involving patients) for satisfactory treatment of faecal***
4 ***incontinence?***

5 **3.12.1** **Introduction**

6 For patients whose symptoms do not improve after a course of treatment, or if
7 patients' symptoms had reached a plateau of improvement, it can be difficult
8 to decide when and whether to stop treatment or to change to another
9 modality or combination of modalities and whether to refer on or to request
10 further investigations.

11 **3.12.2** **Studies considered for this review**

12 Studies considered for this clinical question evaluated the best practice goals
13 for satisfactory treatment of faecal incontinence.

14

15 **3.12.3** **Clinical evidence**

16 We did not retrieve any appropriate studies.

17

18 **3.12.4** **Cost-effectiveness evidence**

19 We did not retrieve any appropriate studies.

20

21 **3.12.5** **Conclusions**

22 As no appropriate evidence was retrieved for this clinical question, the GDG
23 used expert opinion and a consensus development exercise to develop
24 recommendations on initial management (see section 3.15.6).

1 **3.13** *Research on patient views of initial management*

2 A systematic review of patients' views about initial management was
3 undertaken. One good quality study about management was found¹⁵
4 (evidence table 6, appendix D).

5 This Australian study conducted a series of focus groups and interviews with
6 82 consumers and carers from culturally and linguistically diverse groups from
7 rural/metropolitan/remote areas. All participants raised similar issues about
8 managing FI and in particular, continence products. These issues can be
9 summarised as follows:

- 10 • participants found it difficult to know where to seek information.
11 Sources identified by participants included: continence product
12 packaging, books, magazines, internet, social networks such as social
13 clubs or church groups, health professionals and state-funded subsidy
14 schemes
- 15 • participants highlighted the importance of receiving care from
16 healthcare professionals who are able to respond to patients' feelings
17 of vulnerability and embarrassment with sensitivity.
- 18 • participants stated they had a lack of faith in health professionals'
19 knowledge and advice, and ability to empathise with the condition
- 20 • participants stated they had difficulty in identifying products. Often they
21 were unaware that professional assessment and advice for
22 management existed, or they received inconsistent advice. Patients'
23 choices were limited by cost, availability, quality, comfort and design
24 when choosing products.

25 Suggestions for improvement included detailed product information, such as
26 reliable estimates of working capacities of continence products, and
27 instructions for use. General information about incontinence in simple
28 language and better marketing and distribution of information sources in
29 general were also identified as a potential improvements.

1

2 **3.14 Recommendations on baseline assessment**

3 **Healthcare professionals should ensure that people who report or are**
4 **reported to have faecal incontinence:**

- 5 • **receive a focused baseline assessment before any treatment is**
6 **considered**
- 7 • **receive all appropriate initial management before any specialised**
8 **treatment.**

9

10 **Rationale:** No specific evidence evaluating the effectiveness of different
11 protocols of assessment and management was retrieved. However, after
12 considering the evidence for the other clinical questions on assessment and
13 management of faecal incontinence, consulting with expert advisors and
14 participating in a consensus development exercise the GDG decided to
15 recommend a step-wise approach to the management of patients with FI.
16 Most people with FI will present in Primary Care, and many problems can be
17 addressed here without immediate onward referral. We do not have specific
18 evidence on cost-effectiveness but logically the employment in the initial
19 stages of simple, safe and relatively cheap interventions in the community will
20 be more cost-effective than more specialised assessment and treatment.

21

22 **Healthcare professionals should carry out and record a focused**
23 **baseline assessment for patients with faecal incontinence to identify the**
24 **contributory factors. This should comprise:**

- 25 • **relevant medical history (see appendix I)**
- 26 • **general examination**
- 27 • **anorectal examination (see appendix I)**
- 28 • **cognitive assessment, if appropriate.**

29

30 **Rationale:** After considering the retrieved evidence in section 3.3.2 and 3.14,
31 consulting with expert advisors and participating in a consensus development
32 exercise, the GDG decided to recommend a focused baseline assessment for
33 all patients reporting faecal incontinence largely based on their expert opinion.
34 The specific components of the baseline assessment listed above and in
35 Appendices I, J, K and L can provide valuable information in formulating not
36 only the causes of faecal incontinence, but also the impact on the patient such
37 as coping strategies and ability to function on a daily basis. The findings from

1 the baseline assessment will also help to plan an appropriate management
2 strategy.

3

4 **Patients with the following conditions should have these addressed with**
5 **condition-specific interventions before progressing to initial**
6 **management of faecal incontinence:**

- 7 • **faecal loading**
- 8 • **treatable causes of diarrhoea**
- 9 • **warning signs for lower gastrointestinal cancer (see NICE clinical**
10 **guideline on referral for suspected cancer**
11 **www.nice.org.uk/CG027)**
- 12 • **rectal prolapse or third degree haemorrhoids**
- 13 • **acute anal sphincter injury**
- 14 • **acute disc prolapse.**

15 **Rationale:** Although no specific evidence was retrieved on evaluating the
16 effectiveness of addressing underlying causes of FI, after considering the
17 evidence for assessment and management of faecal incontinence (discussed
18 chapters 3-5), consulting with expert advisors and participating in a consensus
19 development exercise, the GDG decided to recommend that patients with the
20 conditions listed above should be offered condition-specific interventions
21 before being offered initial management options to treat faecal incontinence.
22 These conditions will either prevent successful resolution of FI, or warrant
23 further investigation in their own right.

24

25 **3.15 *Recommendations on initial management***

26 **Healthcare professionals should inform patients that a combination of**
27 **initial management interventions is likely to be needed to address faecal**
28 **incontinence. The specific management intervention(s) offered to**
29 **patients should be based on the findings from baseline assessment,**
30 **tailored to individual circumstances and adjusted to personal response.**

31

32 **Rationale:** No specific evidence on combinations of management
33 interventions was retrieved. After considering the evidence for all the clinical
34 questions in section 3.6, consulting with expert advisors and participating in a
35 consensus development exercise the GDG decided that because the
36 symptom of FI often has multiple contributing factors, this will often mean
37 several interventions are appropriate for each patient. The specific
38 combination will depend on the findings of the assessment. It is not

1 appropriate to refer most patients for more specialised assessment until these
2 basic factors have been addressed.

3

4 **3.15.1 Bowel habit**

5 **Initial management should address bowel habit, aiming for ideal stool**
6 **consistency and satisfactory bowel emptying at a predictable time.**

7

8 **A bowel habit intervention should contain the following elements:**

- 9 • **encouraging bowel emptying after meals (to utilise the gastro-**
10 **colic response)**
- 11 • **ensuring toilet facilities are private, comfortable and can be used**
12 **in safety with sufficient time allowed (see ‘Essence of care’**
13 **www.dh.gov.uk and ‘Behind closed doors: using the toilet in**
14 **private’ www.bgs.org.uk)**
- 15 • **teaching patients to adopt a sitting or squatting position where**
16 **possible while emptying the bowel**
- 17 • **teaching patients techniques to empty the bowel without**
18 **straining.**

19

20 **Rationale:** No evidence evaluating the effectiveness of interventions to
21 address bowel habit was retrieved. After consulting with expert advisors and
22 participating in a consensus development exercise the GDG decided to
23 recommend the aims and principles of bowel habit interventions. If complete
24 rectal emptying at a predictable time can be achieved many patients will
25 thereby avoid episodes of FI. Evidence on patient views in section 2.3 in
26 chapter 2 was also considered by the GDG who also wanted to draw attention
27 to ensuring that patients are treated with dignity at all times.

28

29 **3.15.2 Diet and fluid intake**

30 **Healthcare professionals should recommend a diet that promotes an**
31 **ideal stool consistency and predictable bowel emptying. When**
32 **addressing food and fluid intake healthcare professionals should:**

- 33 • **take into account existing therapeutic diets**
- 34 • **ensure that overall nutrient intake is balanced**
- 35 • **consider a food and fluid diary to help form a baseline**

- 1 • **advise patients to modify one food at a time if attempting to**
2 **identify potentially contributory factors (see appendices K and L)**
- 3 • **encourage patients with hard stool and/or clinical dehydration to**
4 **aim for at least 1.5 litres intake of fluid per day. Urinary output**
5 **should be measured where intake is in doubt**
- 6 • **consider the opportunity to screen patients for malnutrition, or**
7 **risk of malnutrition (see NICE clinical guideline on nutrition**
8 **support (www.nice.org.uk/CG032)).**

9

10 **Rationale:** After considering the evidence in section 3.7.3, consulting with
11 expert advisors and participating in a consensus development exercise, the
12 GDG decided to recommend a diet which promotes ideal stool consistency
13 and bowel emptying, as food and fluids may affect faecal consistency and
14 amount the effect of different foods will vary between individuals. These
15 recommendations offer a framework on which to make appropriate
16 adaptations to meet the individual person's needs. Other than fibre no specific
17 evidence was retrieved defining the components of this diet. However, the
18 GDG wanted to highlight the importance of ensuring that any existing
19 therapeutic diets should be taken into account and that the overall nutrient
20 intake should be balanced when advising patients and/or carers. Biochemical
21 deficiency is common in older people particularly those in residential care⁴⁴. In
22 order that the effects of this diet be optimised, a food and fluid diary should be
23 considered to establish a baseline and patients should be encouraged to
24 modify one food at a time in order to establish contributory factors. Although
25 there was no evidence on the effectiveness of specific amounts of fluid to be
26 consumed for patients with hard stool and/or clinical dehydration, the GDG
27 considered that 1.5 litres was an appropriate amount for these patients to aim
28 for. Finally, the GDG wanted to draw specific attention to the risk of
29 malnutrition which may be confounded by some dietary changes.

30

31 **3.15.3 Toilet access**

32 **When addressing toilet access in any home or healthcare setting:**

- 33 • **locations of toilets should be made clear**
- 34 • **equipment to help people to gain access to a toilet should be**
35 **provided**
- 36 • **advice should be given to patients on easily removable clothing to**
37 **reduce time needed for access**
- 38 • **if patient is dependent on others for accessing the toilet, help**
39 **should be readily available**

- 1 • **privacy and dignity should be maintained at all times**
- 2 • **if appropriate, patients should be referred to healthcare**
- 3 **professionals for assessment of home/mobility.**

4

5 **Rationale:** No evidence evaluating the effectiveness of interventions to
6 address toilet access was retrieved. After consulting with expert advisors and
7 participating in a consensus development exercise the GDG decided to
8 recommend some simple, good practice points for patients with limited
9 mobility. Difficulty with toilet access can make the difference between urgency
10 and urge FI. People with limited mobility and/or disabilities can find it difficult
11 to reach the toilet, transfer, adjust clothing, or sit stably and in comfort for long
12 enough to achieve complete bowel emptying.

13

14 **3.15.4 Medication**

15 **When reviewing medications, healthcare professionals should consider**
16 **alternatives to drugs that may be contributing to faecal incontinence**
17 **(see appendix J).**

18

19 **Anti-diarrhoeal medication should be offered to patients with loose**
20 **stools and associated faecal incontinence once other causes for loose**
21 **stools (such as excessive laxative use and dietary factors) have been**
22 **excluded. Anti-diarrhoeal medication should be prescribed in**
23 **accordance with the Summary of Products Characteristics.**

24

25 **Loperamide is the anti-diarrhoeal drug of first choice and can be used**
26 **long-term in doses from 0.5 mg to 16 mg per day or as required. Patients**
27 **who are unable to tolerate loperamide should be offered codeine**
28 **phosphate, or co-phenotrope (Lomotil ®)².**

29

30 **Loperamide should not be offered to patients with:**

- 31 • **hard or infrequent stools**
- 32 • **acute diarrhoea without a diagnosed cause**
- 33 • **an acute flare-up of ulcerative colitis.**

² Check the Summary of Products Characteristics (SPC) for current licensed indications. Informed consent is needed when using outside the licensed indications. This should be discussed and documented in the notes.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37

When loperamide is used it should be:

- **introduced at a very low dose and the dose should be escalated, as tolerated by the patient until the desired stool consistency has been achieved**
- **taken as required by the patient with faecal incontinence**
- **advised that patients can adjust the dose and/or frequency up or down in response to stool consistency and lifestyle.**

If a finer modification of dose is required loperamide syrup should be considered.

Rationale: After considering the evidence retrieved for section 3.8, consulting with expert advisors and participating in a consensus development exercise, the GDG decided to develop recommendations which both consider modifying drugs contributing to faecal incontinence and offering anti-diarrhoeals which are the drugs of first choice in treating faecal incontinence. Once other causes of loose stools have been excluded, anti-diarrhoeal should be offered. We do not have specific evidence on cost-effectiveness of anti-diarrhoeal drugs but the relatively low daily cost of drugs such as loperamide would suggest that for patients that find the drugs effective, they are highly cost-effective. Alternatives are available for people unable to tolerate this drug. The GDG used their expert opinion to recommend several good practice points for the administration of loperamide, relating to contraindications, long term use and modification of dose. While there was no specific evidence on modifying drugs which are contributing to FI, the GDG decided that if possible, alternative medications should be prescribed.

3.15.5 Coping strategies for symptomatic patients

During assessment and initial management patients should be offered advice on coping strategies including:

- **continence products and information about product choice, availability and use**
- **skin care**
- **where to get emotional and psychological support. In some cases counselling or psychological therapy to foster acceptance and positive attitudes**

- 1 • **how to talk to friends and family**
- 2 • **strategies such as planning routes around public conveniences if**
- 3 **patients have to travel.**

4

5 **Patients should be offered:**

- 6 • **disposable body-worn pads and disposable bed pads if needed**
- 7 • **pads in quantities appropriate to the individual's continence**
- 8 **needs. Arbitrary ceilings are inappropriate**
- 9 • **anal plugs for patients who can tolerate them**
- 10 • **a choice of pad styles and designs**
- 11 • **skin care advice; both skin cleansing and protection**
- 12 • **advice on odour control and laundry needs.**

13

14 **The use of reusable absorbent products in the management of faecal**

15 **incontinence is not generally recommended.**

16

17 **Rationale:** After considering the evidence retrieved on patient views in

18 section 2.3 in chapter 2 and 3.10 and 3.13 in this chapter, consulting with

19 expert advisors and participating in a consensus development exercise, the

20 GDG decided to recommend that patients with FI should be offered a number

21 of coping strategies during the baseline assessment and initial management

22 stage of the patient pathway. Uncontrolled FI can be depressing, demoralising

23 and detrimental to social activities. Some interventions may take time to be

24 effective. Sources of information on practical coping are few. Therefore, it is

25 important for healthcare professionals to enable coping while patients undergo

26 initial management. Anecdotal evidence would suggest that access to

27 continence products can allow patients to lead active lives with substantial

28 improvement in quality of life. The supply of such products is therefore likely to

29 be cost-effective. However, if poor-fitting products are provided or products

30 are provided in inadequate numbers, or products have to be regularly

31 laundered then activity and quality of life are likely to be significantly

32 diminished.

33

1 **3.15.6 Review of treatment**

2 **After each intervention healthcare professionals should ask patients if**
3 **faecal incontinence has improved. Patients continuing to experience**
4 **symptoms should be:**

- 5 • **involved in discussions about further treatment options (including**
6 **effectiveness and adverse effects) or alternative coping strategies**
- 7 • **asked if they wish to try further treatments.**

8

9 **Rationale:** Evidence retrieved on patient views in section 2.3 in chapter 2 and
10 3.10, 3.11 and 3.13 in this chapter was considered by the GDG. After
11 consulting with expert advisors and participating in a consensus development
12 exercise the GDG decided to recommend that the wishes of patients should
13 be checked at each stage of the care pathway. Not all patients want
14 automatically to progress through a hierarchy of assessment and treatment.
15 Some are happy with reassurance that there is no serious pathology
16 underlying symptoms.

17

18 **3.15.7 Long-term management**

19 **Healthcare professionals should provide the following to symptomatic**
20 **patients who either do not wish to continue with active treatment or who**
21 **have intractable faecal incontinence:**

- 22 • **advice relating to the preservation of dignity and where possible**
23 **independence**
- 24 • **psychological and emotional support, possibly including referral**
25 **to counsellors or therapists if it seems likely that patients' attitude**
26 **towards their condition and their ability to manage and cope with**
27 **faecal incontinence could improve with professional assistance**
- 28 • **at least 6-monthly review of symptoms**
- 29 • **discussion of any other management options (including specialist**
30 **referral)**
- 31 • **contact details for relevant support groups**
- 32 • **advice on continence products and information about product**
33 **choice, availability and use**
- 34 • **advice on skin care**
- 35 • **how to talk to friends and family**

- 1 • **strategies such as planning routes around public conveniences if**
2 **patients have to travel.**

3

4 **Rationale:** Evidence retrieved on patient views in section 2.3 in chapter 2 and
5 3.10, 3.11 and 3.13 in this chapter was considered by the GDG. After
6 consulting with expert advisors and participating in a consensus development
7 exercise the GDG decided to recommend specific support for patients who do
8 not wish to continue with active treatment or have intractable FI. Since FI may
9 not always be cured, the emphasis is on symptom control and follow-up which
10 needs to be continued long-term. Themes arising from the research on patient
11 views in section 2.3 in chapter 2 also suggested that specific advice on how to
12 manage FI in everyday life would be beneficial.

1

2 **4 Specialised management of faecal**
3 **incontinence**

4 For some patients, baseline assessment and initial management of faecal
5 incontinence is not appropriate, or produces little or no benefit. In these cases,
6 specialised assessment and management can both identify the cause of
7 symptoms and indicate further treatment options.

8 If patients are not appropriate for initial conservative management or if
9 symptoms have not adequately resolved as a result of initial conservative
10 management, a number of specialised conservative management options can
11 be considered. These include pelvic floor exercises, biofeedback and
12 electrical stimulation and rectal irrigation.

13 We undertook literature searches to retrieve RCTs, non-randomised
14 controlled trials, cohort studies and before-after studies which compared the
15 effect of one specialised conservative intervention with another conservative
16 intervention on patient outcomes, no intervention or a placebo.

1 **4.1 What is the effectiveness of pelvic floor/anal sphincter**
2 **exercises versus all other conservative therapies?**

3 **4.1.1 Introduction**

4 In clinical practice pelvic floor muscle/anal sphincter exercises are often
5 suggested for patients with FI. These might be self-directed, taught via verbal
6 and/or written instructions from a health professional, or taught during a
7 vaginal or anal digital examination. In some centres biofeedback equipment is
8 used to facilitate patient teaching and monitor progress. The rationale is to
9 enhance sphincter strength, endurance and speed of response by a
10 programme of systematic exercises, usually over a period of several months.
11 This could in theory enable the patient to better resist the urge to defaecate by
12 use of the external anal sphincter and the puborectalis muscle of the pelvic
13 floor. Better muscle function could also augment resting tone in the anus, thus
14 improving episodes of passive faecal soiling (although the smooth muscle
15 internal anal sphincter, which is mostly responsible for resting anal tone, is not
16 amenable to exercising).

17 Exercises are often used in combination with other interventions (for example,
18 diet, drugs, toileting and evacuation training). This question addresses the
19 specific contribution of exercises vs other interventions.

20

21 **4.1.2 Studies considered for this review**

22 RCTs, non-randomised controlled trials, cohort studies and before-after
23 studies which compared pelvic floor/sphincter exercises vs any other
24 conservative therapy were considered for inclusion.

25

26 **4.1.3 Clinical evidence**

27 We identified four RCTs reported in five papers⁴⁵⁻⁴⁹ that met our inclusion
28 criteria for this clinical question (see evidence table 9, appendix D).

29 *Pelvic floor exercises vs no exercises*

30 Two studies (reported in 3 papers) compared pelvic floor exercises with no
31 exercises^{45,46,48}. Glazener et al^{45,46} reported the results of a study 747 post-
32 natal women with urinary incontinence, 111 of which had faecal incontinence
33 at baseline (57/371 and 54/376 in the intervention and control groups
34 respectively). The specific comparison under consideration was education on
35 pelvic floor exercises administered vs standard post-natal management which
36 included a brief description of pelvic floor exercises. Both interventions
37 occurred 3 months post-delivery. The study had 9 month and 6 year follow-up
38 periods.

1 Norton et al⁴⁸ reported results from 171 patients referred to a specialist
2 colorectal hospital with episodes of faecal incontinence. These patients were
3 allocated to one of four interventions:

4 a) general faecal incontinence advice

5 b) advice + pelvic floor exercises with feedback from digital examination

6 c) advice + pelvic floor exercises with computer assisted biofeedback

7 d) advice + pelvic floor exercises with computer assisted biofeedback + use of
8 a home biofeedback device.

9 This section will consider the results of arm a vs arms b, c and d (no
10 exercises, versus exercises with or without biofeedback). Further comparisons
11 from this trial are reported in sections 4.2.3 and 4.3.3.

12 Both studies concluded that pelvic floor exercises yielded no greater benefit
13 than standard care. Glazener et al^{45,46} reported that although significant
14 differences for faecal incontinence were found at 1 year (intervention group:
15 4% FI vs control group: 11%) these results were not sustained at 6 year follow
16 up (control: 12% vs intervention: 13%) (95% CI -6.4% to 5.1%). Norton et al⁴⁸
17 concluded that there was no difference between the groups on any of the
18 faecal incontinence outcomes recorded at 12 months follow-up.

19 *Pelvic floor exercises vs biofeedback*

20 Three studies⁴⁷⁻⁴⁹ compared pelvic floor exercise with biofeedback. Solomon
21 et al⁴⁹ assessed the effectiveness of the following interventions in patients
22 with mild to moderate faecal incontinence with at least mild pudendal
23 neuropathy on a single fibre, four quadrant sampling of external sphincter with
24 electromyography and no anatomic defect in the external sphincter:

25 a) pelvic floor exercises with feedback from digital examination

26 b) pelvic floor exercises with biofeedback using transanal ultrasound

27 c) pelvic floor exercises with biofeedback using anal manometry

28 This study randomised 120 patients to one of three interventions above which
29 was then administered over 4 months. The results of arm a vs b and a vs c
30 are reported in this section, the results of arm b vs arm c are reported in
31 sections 4.2.3 and 4.3.3.

32 llnyckyj et al⁴⁷ examined the effectiveness of education and pelvic floor
33 exercises (n=11) against education, pelvic floor exercises plus biofeedback
34 (n=7) over 2 months. This study was conducted in females with regular and
35 frequent "idiopathic" faecal incontinence. These participants were recruited
36 through poster and newspaper advertisement.

37 None of the studies reported any significant differences between the arms.

1

2 **4.1.4 Cost-effectiveness evidence**

3 No economic evidence was found for this question.

4

5 **4.1.5 Conclusions**

6 We did not retrieve any evidence to show that pelvic floor exercises are more
7 effective than standard care or other conservative therapies, nor that
8 biofeedback enhances the effect of exercises alone.

9 The GDG used expert opinion and consensus development methods to
10 propose recommendations on specialised management. These can be found
11 in section 4.5.

1 **4.2** ***What is the effectiveness of biofeedback vs all other***
2 ***conservative therapies?***

3 **4.2.1 Introduction**

4 The following modalities of biofeedback for FI are described in the literature:

5 **Rectal sensitivity training:** a rectal balloon is gradually distended with air or
6 water and the patient is asked to report first sensation of rectal filling. Once
7 this threshold volume is determined, repeated re-inflations of the balloon are
8 performed, the objective being to teach the patient to perceive the distension
9 at progressively lower volumes. The rationale is that some patients are found
10 to have high threshold volumes and if the patient can detect stool arriving
11 earlier, there is more possibility to either find a toilet or use an anal squeeze,
12 or both. Conversely, the same technique has also been used in those with
13 urgency and a hypersensitive rectum to teach the patient to tolerate
14 progressively larger volumes.

15 **Strength training:** biofeedback techniques have been used to demonstrate
16 anal sphincter pressures or activity to the patient, thereby enabling teaching of
17 anal sphincter exercises and giving feedback on performance and progress.
18 This can be achieved by using EMG skin electrodes, a manometric pressure
19 probe, intra-anal EMG, or anal ultrasound. The patient is encouraged, by
20 seeing or hearing the signal, to enhance squeeze strength and endurance.
21 There is no consensus on an optimum exercise regimen for use at home
22 between sessions, nor on the number of squeezes, the frequency of exercises
23 or treatment duration, with different authors describing very different
24 programmes.

25 **Co-ordination training:** some authors have described a three-balloon system
26 for biofeedback for FI. One distension balloon is situated in the rectum; the
27 second and third smaller pressure-recording balloons are situated in the upper
28 and lower anal canal. Rectal distension triggers the recto-anal inhibitory reflex.
29 This momentary anal relaxation is a point of vulnerability for people with FI
30 and incontinence can occur at this time. By distending the rectal balloon and
31 showing the patient this consequent pressure drop, the aim is to teach the
32 patient to counteract this by a voluntary anal squeeze, hard enough and for
33 long enough for resting pressure to return to its baseline level.

34 The three methods described above are not mutually exclusive, and many
35 protocols combine two or three elements together. At present access to
36 biofeedback is relatively limited in England and Wales and some patients
37 have to travel long distances to access such a service. Some options may
38 only be available via certain professionals (for example, not all continence
39 nurses or physiotherapists have biofeedback or electrical stimulation
40 equipment at present) and referral to a specialist centre or physiotherapist
41 may be needed. Certain patient groups, for whom other conservative
42 therapies are ineffective, may respond better to biofeedback. Also we need to
43 know if there is any rational basis for allocating patients to a trial of

1 conservative therapy, immediate referral for biofeedback, or discounting both
2 and opting for surgery.

3

4 **4.2.2 Studies considered for this review**

5 RCTs, non-randomised controlled trials, cohort studies and before-after
6 studies which compared biofeedback vs any other conservative therapy were
7 considered for inclusion.

8

9 **4.2.3 Clinical evidence**

10 We identified three RCTs⁴⁷⁻⁴⁹ that met the inclusion criteria for this clinical
11 question (evidence table 10, appendix D). The details of all three studies are
12 also discussed in section 4.1.3.

13 *Biofeedback vs no biofeedback (standard care)*

14 We retrieved one study which compared two methods of biofeedback with
15 standard care⁴⁸.

- 16 • Arm c: advice + pelvic floor exercises with computer assisted
17 biofeedback vs arm a: general faecal incontinence advice
- 18 • Arm d: advice + pelvic floor exercises with computer assisted
19 biofeedback + use of a home biofeedback device vs arm a: general faecal
20 incontinence advice

21 Norton et al⁴⁸ concluded that there was no difference between the groups on
22 any of the faecal incontinence outcomes recorded at 12 months follow-up.

23 *Biofeedback vs pelvic floor exercises*

24 We retrieved three studies which compared biofeedback and pelvic floor
25 exercises⁴⁷⁻⁴⁹. No study found a significant difference. The details and results
26 of the relevant comparisons in these studies are discussed in section 4.1.3
27 (see evidence table 10, appendix D).

28

29 **4.2.4 Cost-effectiveness evidence**

30 No economic evidence was found for this question.

31

32 **4.2.5 Conclusions**

33 We did not retrieve any evidence to show that biofeedback is more effective
34 than standard care, exercises alone, or other conservative therapies.

DRAFT FOR CONSULTATION

1 The recommendations on specialised management are in section 4.5.

2

1 **4.3** ***Which modality of biofeedback is most effective at***
2 ***managing faecal incontinence?***

3 **4.3.1 Introduction**

4 Once the decision to use biofeedback has been made, there is a choice of
5 modalities, which may be used singly or in combination. In practice, choice is
6 often pragmatic, determined by availability of equipment. This review aims to
7 identify which modalities are most effective.

8

9 **4.3.2 Studies considered for this review**

10 RCTs, non-randomised controlled trials, cohort studies and before-after
11 studies which compared two or more different methods of biofeedback were
12 considered for inclusion.

13

14 **4.3.3 Clinical evidence**

15 We identified five RCTs⁴⁸⁻⁵² which met the inclusion criteria for this clinical
16 question (two studies^{50,51} were reported in a systematic review⁵³ (evidence
17 table 11, appendix D). Studies that compared the same method of
18 biofeedback using different treatment protocols were retrieved, in addition to
19 studies which compared different methods of biofeedback. One non-
20 randomised controlled trial was identified⁵⁴.

21 *Comparison of the same method of biofeedback using different treatment*
22 *protocols*

23 Three studies^{48,50,52} randomised patients to receive the same type of
24 biofeedback but compared different treatment protocols. One non-randomised
25 controlled trial⁵⁴ compared treatment protocols, one based on face-to-face
26 follow up and the other on telephone follow up (both groups had initial face to
27 face assessment). Miner et al⁵⁰ examined sensory retraining using a rectal
28 balloon in the first phase of the study. Twenty-five patients with predominantly
29 idiopathic faecal incontinence were randomised to receive active retraining or
30 sham retraining with no instruction on how to improve performance and were
31 followed up after 4 weeks.

32 In Heyman et al⁵², 40 patients with faecal incontinence who were identified as
33 non-surgical candidates were randomised to receive one of the four treatment
34 protocols:

35 1) Biofeedback display of EMG activity of pelvic floor muscles, education as to
36 pelvic floor physiology and operant conditioning techniques to retrain this
37 function

1 2) EMG biofeedback training plus balloon-distension sensory training plus
2 pelvic floor exercises

3 3) EMG biofeedback training plus home trainer EMG biofeedback for the
4 home practice portion of the training programme

5 4) EMG biofeedback training plus home trainer EMG biofeedback for the
6 home practice portion of the training programme plus balloon distension
7 sensory training.

8 The study described in Norton et al 2003⁴⁸, previously discussed in sections
9 4.1.3 and 4.2.3, compared arm c: advice + pelvic floor exercises with
10 computer-assisted biofeedback and arm d: advice + pelvic floor exercises with
11 computer-assisted biofeedback + use of a home biofeedback device. There
12 was no difference between these two groups. Heyman reported a significant
13 difference in percentage reduction in mean number of days per week with
14 incontinent episodes (p= 0.001, 0.004, 0.001, 0.023 across groups 1-4
15 respectively)⁵². Miner et al⁵⁰ reported a significant difference in incontinent
16 episodes per week (weighted mean difference: -1.40; 95%CI: -1.51 to -1.29),
17 people achieving full continence (OR: 0.11; 95%CI: 0.01 to 0.90) and
18 improving continence status (OR: 0.17; 95%CI: 0.03 to 0.83), all favouring the
19 active sensory training. A number of other outcomes were reported, although
20 none reached statistical significance.

21 The study by Byrne et al⁵⁴ compared incontinence outcomes between groups
22 offered different management techniques. Patients were allocated into groups
23 according to their ease of access to the clinic for face-to-face assessment; if
24 there were difficulties in attending (if for example patients lived in a rural area)
25 then the individual was allocated to the telephone intervention.

26 • Group one: Initial face-to-face assessment and treatment with
27 transanal manometry and ultrasound biofeedback, followed by three
28 treatments conducted via telephone and a final face-to-face session.

29 • Group two: Standard treatment involved five face-to-face treatment
30 sessions with manometry and ultrasound biofeedback.

31 Both groups demonstrated significant improvements in incontinence scores
32 pre- to post-intervention. However, there were no significant differences
33 between the groups.

34 *Comparison of different methods of biofeedback*

35 We retrieved two studies^{49,51} which randomised patients to receive different
36 methods of biofeedback. Fynes et al⁵¹ included in a systematic review⁵³
37 compared vaginal pelvic floor manometric pressure biofeedback conducted by
38 a continence nurse vs weekly sessions of anal EMG biofeedback plus anal
39 electrical stimulation by a physiotherapist in 40 female patients with impaired
40 faecal continence after obstetric anal sphincter injury. Solomon et al⁴⁹ which is
41 also discussed in section 4.1.3 and 4.2.3, compared anal ultrasound
42 biofeedback with anal manometry.

1 In the study reported by Fynes et al there was a statistically significant
2 difference in the proportion of patients to become asymptomatic or to improve
3 in their incontinence status in favour of the anal EMG plus electrical
4 stimulation group (respectively, OR 4.54 95% CI 1.30-15.83 in favour of
5 electrical stimulation group; OR 12.38 95% CI 2.67-57.46 in favour of
6 electrical stimulation group)⁵¹. However, due to the addition of electrical
7 stimulation to the second arm, it is not clear if this treatment effect is due to
8 the method of biofeedback or to electrical stimulation. In the study by Solomon
9 et al there were no significant differences in outcomes between the treatment
10 groups and the authors concluded that transanal ultrasound offered no benefit
11 over anal manometric biofeedback⁴⁹.

12

13 **4.3.4 Cost-effectiveness evidence**

14 No studies of cost-effectiveness were identified.

15

16 **4.3.5 Conclusions**

17 In conclusion, one small study showed that active sensory training is more
18 effective than sham training for patients with “idiopathic” faecal incontinence⁵⁰.
19 Two studies reported that the addition of a home training kit did not improve
20 outcomes in patients with the former study also concluding that the addition of
21 balloon distension sensitivity training did not improve outcomes^{48,52}.

22 In studies which compared different methods of biofeedback, one study
23 concluded that EMG plus electrical stimulation produced better outcome than
24 vaginal pelvic floor manometric pressure biofeedback⁵¹. A second study
25 concluded that transanal ultrasound biofeedback offered no statistically
26 significant benefit over anal manometry biofeedback⁴⁹.

27 The GDG used expert opinion and consensus development methods to
28 propose recommendations on specialised management. These can be found
29 in section 4.5.

30

1 **4.4 What is the effectiveness of electrical stimulation to**
2 **manage faecal incontinence?**

3 **4.4.1 Introduction**

4 The stated purpose of neuromuscular electrical stimulation is to re-educate
5 the anal sphincter and other muscles of the pelvic floor to contract. The
6 treatments aim to progress towards graduated active exercises, in order to
7 improve pelvic floor muscle strength and endurance and to regain function.
8 Electrical stimulation is carried out using a specific anal probe, at frequencies
9 capable of producing a tetanic muscle contraction, using a comfortable
10 intensity and with an appropriate duty cycle. When possible, the patient works
11 with the stimulating current (that is, performs a voluntary contraction at the
12 same time). The treatment time is typically 5-30 minutes in duration, although
13 there are no generally agreed published protocols. Electrical stimulation is an
14 invasive and potentially uncomfortable procedure. It requires specialist
15 equipment and training and it is not currently available at all centres.

16 Patients are often considered as suitable for electrical stimulation if, on
17 examination, they either have no active anal sphincter contraction, or a weak
18 or poorly sustained contraction. This would be identified at initial assessment
19 following digital/manometric/electromyographic (EMG) evaluation of the
20 sphincter. Alternatively, stimulation may be used to augment the effectiveness
21 of anal sphincter/pelvic floor exercises.

22

23 **4.4.2 Studies considered for this review**

24 RCTs, non-randomised controlled trials, cohort studies and before-after
25 studies which compared the effectiveness of electrical stimulation with either
26 no electrical stimulation or any other conservative therapy in adult patients
27 with faecal incontinence were considered.

28

29 **4.4.3 Clinical evidence**

30 Four RCTs^{51,55-57} met the inclusion criteria for this clinical question (evidence
31 table 12, appendix D.

32 *Electrical stimulation vs no electrical stimulation*

33 One RCT⁵⁷ looked at the effectiveness of electrical stimulation vs no electrical
34 stimulation. Norton et al⁵⁷ recruited 90 adult patients who had been referred to
35 a tertiary referral hospital. 47 patients received active anal stimulation at 35
36 Hz and 43 patients received 'sham' stimulation at 1 Hz. The follow-up period
37 was 8 weeks. The authors reported that on an intention-to-treat analysis, that
38 there was no difference between the two groups on any of the outcome
39 measures.

1 *Electrical stimulation + biofeedback vs biofeedback alone*

2 Two studies compared electrical stimulation as an adjunct to biofeedback
3 compared to biofeedback alone. The details, results and limitations of the
4 study by Fynes et al⁵¹ are reported in section 4.3.3. The second study⁵⁵
5 randomised 60 female patients with faecal incontinence episodes after
6 obstetric injury at 12 weeks after delivery. Patients received either intra-anal
7 EMG biofeedback alone or intra-anal EMG biofeedback augmented with
8 electrical stimulation of the anal sphincter once a week for 12 weeks. Both
9 groups also carried out pelvic floor exercises between treatments. However,
10 this study only reports within-group comparisons. Between-group
11 comparisons cannot be made using the data provided in the paper.

12 *Electrical stimulation vs surgery*

13 One study⁵⁶ randomised a total of 59 patients with disabling faecal
14 incontinence to either levatorplasty surgery (n=31) or anal plug
15 electrostimulation of the pelvic floor (n=28). At 24 months follow-up the only
16 outcome which reached significance was improvement in physical and social
17 handicap (p = 0.001 and 0.006 respectively), in favour of the levatorplasty
18 group. At 3 months there was a significantly greater improvement in
19 continence in favour of the levatorplasty group (p = 0.032), although this was
20 not sustained at 24 months. No significant differences were therefore found
21 between groups.

22

23 **4.4.4 Cost-effectiveness evidence**

24 No appropriate studies were retrieved.

25

26 **4.4.5 Conclusions**

27 The evidence was inconclusive in this area. Therefore, the GDG used expert
28 opinion and consensus development methods to propose recommendations
29 on specialised management. These can be found in section 4.5.

30

31

1 **4.5 Recommendations**

2 **Patients who continue to have episodes of faecal incontinence after**
3 **initial management, should be referred to a specialist continence service**
4 **for consideration of specialised management options which may**
5 **include:**

- 6 • **pelvic floor re-education programmes**
- 7 • **bowel retraining**
- 8 • **specialist dietary assessment and management**
- 9 • **biofeedback**
- 10 • **electrical stimulation**
- 11 • **rectal irrigation**

12 **These treatments may not be appropriate for patients who are unable to**
13 **understand and/or comply with instruction. For example, pelvic floor re-**
14 **education programmes may not be appropriate for those with**
15 **neurological or spinal disease/injury resulting in faecal incontinence due**
16 **to complete loss of voluntary control.**

17 **Rationale:** After reviewing the evidence from sections 4.1, 4.2, 4.3 and 4.4
18 consulting with expert advisors and participating in a consensus development
19 exercise, the GDG consequently decided to develop recommendations on the
20 specialised management options available. As faecal incontinence can be due
21 to a variety of factors, this specialised package of care can be tailored to the
22 needs of the individual. We do not have specific evidence for the cost-
23 effectiveness of these services. However, we know interventions, such as
24 pelvic floor exercise are safer and cheaper than surgery and therefore are
25 likely to be cost-effective compared with referral for surgery. On the other
26 hand, they are likely to be more costly than initial management and therefore
27 are only likely to be cost-effective in patients for whom initial management has
28 not been fully effective.

29 Initial assessment and management of faecal incontinence will usually be
30 available in the primary care setting. However, a specialist continence service
31 will be staffed by healthcare professionals who have undertaken further study
32 and training to acquire the skills needed for more comprehensive assessment.
33 These healthcare professionals will have access to specialised equipment for
34 their assessment and treatment.

35

36 **Healthcare professionals should consider if patients with neurological**
37 **or spinal disease/injury (for example spinal cord injury, spina bifida,**
38 **stroke, multiple sclerosis) resulting in faecal incontinence, who have**
39 **some residual motor function and are still symptomatic after baseline**

1 **assessment and initial management, could benefit from specialised**
2 **management.**

3 **Rationale:** No specific evidence on this patient group was retrieved. However,
4 the GDG felt it was important that patients with neurological disease and/or
5 injury with faecal incontinence with partial loss of sensory and motor function
6 are considered for options listed above. It is important that these individuals
7 should have the opportunity for specialist assessment and treatment and that
8 diagnostic overshadowing does not prevent those with partial loss of control
9 from appropriate care. Patients should also be re-assessed when appropriate,
10 if they suffer from conditions that can show symptomatic improvement over
11 time, such as stroke.

12

13 **A programme of pelvic floor re-education should be agreed with the**
14 **patient. The progress of patients having pelvic floor exercises should be**
15 **monitored by digital reassessment by an appropriately trained**
16 **healthcare professional who is supervising the treatment. There should**
17 **be a review of patients' symptoms on completion of the programme and**
18 **other treatment options considered if appropriate.**

19 **Rationale:** No evidence of increased effectiveness of pelvic floor exercises
20 compared with other management options was found (see section 4.1). After
21 consulting with expert advisors and participating in a consensus development
22 exercise, the GDG decided to develop recommend pelvic floor re-education. It
23 is important to determine a plan of treatment at the outset, where the patient
24 and the health professional have identified achievable targets. As the purpose
25 of pelvic floor re-education is to improve the strength and endurance of the
26 muscles, digital examination of the anal sphincter complex allows the
27 monitoring of any changes.

1 **4.6 Recommendation for research**

2 The GDG identified the following priority area for research:

3 **The value of pelvic floor exercises in preventing and treating obstetric-**
4 **related faecal incontinence.**

5 **Why this is important:**

6 Obstetric related faecal incontinence is a distressing symptom which may
7 occur early after childbirth. Obstetric injury is also the major cause of
8 incontinence in older women, so reducing risk would have important benefits
9 for both young and old patients. Obstetric risk factors relate not just to
10 sphincter disruption, but also to pelvic floor damage, and there is reason to
11 suggest that improving pelvic and sphincter strength prior to potential injury
12 may be beneficial. Equally, early intervention post-partum may help reduce
13 the well recognised risks of delayed faecal incontinence in women.

14 Pregnant women and those who have given birth within the last 6 months
15 (possibly excluding third and fourth degree tears) would usefully be
16 randomised to one of 3 groups:

- 17 • standardised pelvic floor exercises
- 18 • generic advice and no specific pelvic floor intervention in second and
19 third term pregnancy
- 20 • generic advice and no specific pelvic floor intervention in women post-
21 partum

22 All groups could be stratified according to presence of symptoms. Within the
23 post-partum group, patients could be stratified to those with and without
24 known risk factors for faecal incontinence. This would allow comparisons to be
25 drawn between treatment groups and also across strata of symptoms and risk
26 factors. Outcome measurement would include symptoms, quality of life, carer
27 outcomes, physiology, imaging data and health costs with intention of detailed
28 economic modelling. Measurements should be taken at short term (6 months)
29 and longer term (3 years) to allow comparison with baseline and between
30 standard vs complete assessment limbs.

31 There is no standardisation of what pelvic floor exercises should comprise.
32 There is also no evidence base of whether treatment prior to potential injury
33 (i.e. labour) serves a protective role. This study will require the interaction of
34 obstetric, colorectal and physiotherapy services across primary and
35 secondary care.

1 **5 Specialist assessment**

2 Specialised testing may include the measurement of the pressures generated
3 by the anal sphincter and rectum, testing anorectal sensation (functional
4 assessment) and imaging (structural assessment). Other tests can help to
5 categorise causes of incontinence. In patients with suspected anal sphincter
6 disruption or neurological diseases, these additional tests may have a
7 particular role in defining treatment options. The tests may also be useful in
8 deciding treatments for neurologically intact patients. Endoscopic
9 investigations are important if there is a suspicion that underlying bowel
10 conditions may be the cause of symptoms.

1 **5.1** ***What does functional testing add to the assessment***
2 ***of patients with faecal incontinence?***

3

4 **5.1.1 Introduction**

5 In patients with a clinical history, symptoms or a test result that suggests a
6 congenital or acquired structural change to the anal sphincter, there may be a
7 need to assess if there is any change or abnormality in the resting or squeeze
8 pressure of the anal sphincter complex.

9

10 **5.1.2 Studies considered for this review**

11 We undertook literature searches to retrieve RCTs, non-randomised
12 controlled trials, cohort studies and before-after studies which measured the
13 effect of performing a diagnostic test versus not performing a diagnostic test
14 on patient outcomes. As a small number of appropriate studies were retrieved,
15 we also searched for diagnostic studies with an appropriate 'gold standard' to
16 help inform the clinical questions.

17 Functional testing for the purposes of this guideline included rectal
18 compliance, anal manometry, rectal distension sensitivity, pudendal nerve
19 terminal motor latency (PNTML), anal EMG and electro sensitivity testing.

20

21 **5.1.3 Clinical evidence**

22 We retrieved one study for this clinical question¹⁸ (see evidence table 13,
23 appendix D). Sultan et al reported the diagnostic accuracy of manometry and
24 concentric needle electromyography to detect external sphincter defects
25 against gold standard histology. The study was conducted in a small number
26 of consecutive patients (N=12) selected for sphincter repair (the prevalence of
27 external sphincter defects in this study was 75%).

28 The authors reported that manometry had both a sensitivity and specificity of
29 67% in the reported group of patients. Concentric needle electromyography
30 was reported to have a high sensitivity (89%) but a low specificity (33%). The
31 results of this study should be interpreted with some caution as the sample of
32 patients was very small and had already been selected for surgery. In
33 addition, two out of 12 patients could not tolerate multiple needle insertions so
34 suspected defects were not confirmed. The authors also chose a definition of
35 abnormal sphincter pressure (below 40mmH₂O) which may not be widely
36 used in clinical practice.

37 On the basis of this study, neither manometry nor EMG appears to be
38 sensitive or specific enough to diagnose anal sphincter defects with
39 confidence. This may mean that patients undergo unnecessary sphincter

1 repair or are not offered surgery where it might be beneficial. It is also not
2 clear what role these diagnostic tests may have in a group of patients not
3 selected for surgery.

4

5 **5.1.4 Cost-effectiveness evidence**

6 We did not retrieve any appropriate studies.

7

8 **5.1.5 Conclusions**

9 As the only study retrieved for this question was small and in a very specific
10 group of patients, there is no conclusive evidence on the role of functional
11 testing in the assessment of patients with faecal incontinence.

12 The GDG used expert opinion and consensus development methods to
13 propose recommendations on specialised management. These can be found
14 in section 5.6.

1 **5.2** ***What do imaging tests add to the assessment of***
2 ***patients with faecal incontinence?***

3

4 **5.2.1 Introduction**

5 Structural assessment of the anal sphincter complex in patients with faecal
6 incontinence may be important in defining the cause of symptoms and in
7 planning treatment. Imaging assessment may help identify patients who have
8 a disrupted sphincter and may also identify patients whose symptoms are
9 contributed to by sphincter degeneration.

10 It is currently difficult to know how to select suitable patients for anal sphincter
11 repair. Sphincter defects may involve either the internal or the external anal
12 sphincter in isolation, or both. Such localisation of the injury is only really
13 possible using imaging techniques, particularly in those with iatrogenic trauma
14 (for example, perianal fistula surgery, haemorrhoidectomy, or lateral
15 sphincterotomy for anal fissure). However, surgical findings may be at odds
16 with results from imaging, which casts doubt on any currently available
17 diagnostic tool for true anal sphincter defects.

18 Constipation, rectal evacuation difficulties or rectal prolapse may each
19 contribute to faecal incontinence in some patients. Imaging may help to define
20 these problems.

21

22 **5.2.2 Studies considered for this review**

23 RCTs, non-randomised controlled trials, cohort studies and before-after
24 studies which compared pelvic floor/sphincter exercises vs any other
25 conservative therapy were considered for inclusion.

26 Imaging techniques included for the purposes of this clinical question
27 comprised anal, vaginal or perineal ultrasound, magnetic resonance imaging
28 (MRI), defaecography, computed tomography (CT), colonography, plain
29 abdominal x-ray and barium enema.

30

31 **5.2.3 Clinical evidence**

32 Eleven studies which evaluated the diagnostic accuracy of imaging
33 techniques were retrieved^{18,58,59,59,60,60-65} (evidence table 14, appendix D).
34 There was some difficulty in synthesising the evidence for this review. The
35 imaging techniques were compared to different gold standards, and also
36 different outcomes were investigated across different papers. Additionally,
37 definitions of outcomes (for example, scarring/thinning/defect) were not
38 always defined well, therefore some measure of interpretation was required.

1 *MRI*

2 We retrieved three studies⁵⁸⁻⁶⁰ on the diagnostic accuracy of MRI against
3 histological gold standard or 'surgeons judgment'. Three⁵⁸⁻⁶⁰ studies evaluated
4 the role of endoanal MRI and three⁵⁸⁻⁶⁰ studies looked at endovaginal MRI.
5 The studies were carried out in predominately female populations with faecal
6 incontinence due to obstetric trauma (evidence table 14, appendix D).

7 In two studies^{58,60}, the diagnostic accuracy across all the outcomes reported
8 was high, sensitivity ranged from 67-100% while specificity ranged from 72-
9 100%. One study⁵⁹ however, reported a low specificity of MRI at determining
10 the condition of the external anal sphincter (14.3%) and internal anal sphincter
11 (42.6%).

12 Some of the outcomes reported in these studies are compared to the
13 surgeon's opinion, as opposed to an objective reference standard. In addition,
14 all the studies were small (between 19 and 22 patients) conducted in patients
15 who had already been selected for surgery. Therefore the results of the
16 studies should be interpreted and generalised with caution. In addition to this
17 general issue, in the study by Pinta et al⁵⁹ the endocoil used was not designed
18 primarily for this work; a prostate coil was used in the vagina. This is not
19 equivalent to an endoanal coil being used endoanally. The study by Briel et
20 al⁵⁸ is also undermined by the assumption that all included patients with 'post-
21 obstetric incontinence' had a tear, although it is unclear how this was
22 confirmed.

23 *Ultrasonography*

24 We retrieved eight studies^{18,59-65} which evaluated the diagnostic accuracy of
25 ultrasonography against surgical findings, histology, or a different type of
26 ultrasonography (evidence table 14, appendix D). Seven studies^{18,59-64} used
27 trans- or endoanal ultrasound while the study by Meyenberger utilised
28 endoscopic ultrasound. One study compared transvaginal with transanal
29 endosonography⁶⁵. The predominant cause of incontinence in all studies was
30 trauma, usually obstetric.

31 The sensitivities and specificities reported relate to the condition of the anal
32 sphincter. The majority of studies reported both sensitivity and specificity to be
33 above 80% (range 0–100% and 14.2–100% respectively), including those
34 studies which used histology rather than surgical findings as the gold
35 standard.

36 Additional limitations of the studies reviewed include small patient numbers
37 (all had <50 patients) and that the patients had already been selected for
38 surgery. In addition, Meyenberger et al⁶² used an out-dated ultrasound
39 technique with low resolution methodology. Although the results of this study
40 are sensitive and specific, this particular ultrasound technique has not been
41 reproduced. In addition, this study used the surgeon's estimate as the gold
42 standard. The study by Pinta et al⁵⁹ which compares endovaginal MRI with
43 endoanal ultrasound involves many inappropriate comparisons; different
44 modalities and different anatomy. Finally, Frudinger et al⁶⁵ did not differentiate

1 the analysed results between incontinent and continent patients, thus
2 invalidating their sensitivity and specificity data for this review.

3

4 **5.2.4 Cost-effectiveness evidence**

5 We did not retrieve any appropriate studies.

6

7 **5.2.5 Conclusions**

8 The studies retrieved for this clinical question document the relative paucity of
9 evidence comparing imaging to a surgical gold standard. Such lack of
10 evidence is understandable given the highly invasive nature of sphincter
11 surgery.

12 The evidence-base discussed above suggests that EMG has no advantage in
13 the era of endoanal ultrasound¹⁸ although the limitation of this evidence
14 makes this conclusion uncertain. In addition, as no study reported findings of
15 imaging assessment techniques to long-term (or even short term) patient
16 outcomes (for example, symptom relief) it is not clear what effect this would
17 have on the management of patients.

18 The GDG used expert opinion and consensus development methods to
19 propose recommendations on specialised management. These can be found
20 in section 5.6.

21

22

1 **5.3** ***What does endoscopy add to the assessment of***
2 ***patients with faecal incontinence?***

3 **5.3.1 Introduction**

4 Inspection of the rectal and colonic mucosa may be important in excluding
5 colorectal causes of incontinence (such as cancer, colorectal polyps,
6 inflammatory bowel disease). If present, these conditions would need primary
7 treatment before the faecal incontinence is addressed.

8

9 **5.3.2 Studies considered for this review**

10 RCTs, non-randomised controlled trials, cohort studies and before-after
11 studies which compared pelvic floor/sphincter exercises vs any other
12 conservative therapy were considered for inclusion.

13 For the purposes of this guideline, endoscopy included rigid sigmoidoscopy,
14 flexible sigmoidoscopy and colonoscopy.

15

16 **5.3.3 Clinical evidence**

17 We did not retrieve any appropriate studies for this clinical question.

18

19 **5.3.4 Cost-effectiveness evidence**

20 We did not retrieve any appropriate studies.

21

22 **5.3.5 Conclusions**

23 As no clinical or cost-effective evidence was retrieved for this clinical question
24 the GDG used expert opinion and consensus development methods to
25 propose recommendations. These can be found in section 5.6.

1 **5.4 Are any investigation techniques better than others?**

2 **5.4.1 Introduction**

3 When assessing the patient with faecal incontinence, there are several ways
4 of collecting the same information. There may be clinical, cost or patient
5 related reasons as to why one test is preferable to another. For instance there
6 are several different methods of assessing if there is any change or
7 abnormality in the resting or squeeze pressure of the anal sphincter complex.
8 Anal manometry is an invasive and potentially uncomfortable procedure. It
9 requires specialist equipment and training and is not currently available at all
10 centres. Digital examination also requires training, but can be used in most
11 clinical situations.

12

13 **5.4.2 Studies considered for this review**

14 We undertook a literature review to retrieve studies which compared different
15 investigation techniques to assess patients with faecal incontinence. Digital
16 examination, manometry, surgical assessment, anal and vaginal ultrasound,
17 external sphincter electromyography and defaecating proctography were all
18 included.

19

20 **5.4.3 Clinical evidence**

21 The results from this section are summarised in evidence table 15, appendix
22 D.

23 *Digital examination vs manometry*

24 We retrieved three studies⁶⁶⁻⁶⁸ reported the diagnostic accuracy of digital
25 examination alone on different outcomes relating to sphincter function. The
26 gold standard used in all the studies was anal manometry. The specific patient
27 groups in which these studies were conducted was not always clear; Hill et
28 al⁶⁸ recruited patients with idiopathic faecal incontinence, while the study
29 reported by Buch et al⁶⁶ reported results from patients with faecal
30 incontinence at least monthly.

31 Across all the studies, the sensitivity of digital examination on all of the
32 outcomes reported tended to be greater (range 73-96%) than the specificity
33 (range 11-57%), apart from one outcome, gaping anus, reported in Hill et al⁶⁸
34 which has a high sensitivity (73%) and specificity (81%).

35 In one of these studies⁶⁶ it was unclear if the outcomes were calculated using
36 the results from patients with FI (n=106), or if they were combined with results
37 from healthy controls (n=44) and patients with constipation (n=41) who were
38 also recruited into the study. In addition, 37% of patients within the group
39 reported in Eckardt et al⁶⁷ were constipated.

1 *Clinical assessment vs 'special investigations'*

2 We found one study¹⁷ which reported the sensitivity and specificity of clinical
3 assessment in patients referred to a specialist centre for assessment of faecal
4 incontinence (N=50) (see evidence table 16). The authors compared clinical
5 assessment to 'special investigations' (anal ultrasound, anal manometry,
6 external sphincter electromyography and defaecating proctography).

7 The outcomes reported, which include structural damage to the sphincter and
8 presence of associated causes of faecal incontinence (for example, rectal
9 prolapse, haemorrhoids/local anal causes), generally had high sensitivities
10 (64-100%) and specificities (94-100%) for clinical assessment when
11 compared to 'special investigations'.

12 The primary focus of this study was whether clinical examination could predict
13 structural sphincter integrity. However this is only relevant when surgery is
14 being considered. As surgery is seldom the first option for management in the
15 newly presenting patient, this only becomes relevant at the specialist stage of
16 investigations. Other outcomes reported in Keating et al¹⁷ suggest that
17 inspection is as good as imaging at detecting vaginal or rectal prolapse.

18 These results should be interpreted with some caution, as the study is both
19 small and took place in a specialist referral centre. It is not clear that the
20 results can be replicated in a non-specialist setting. It was also unclear if
21 clinical assessment referred to history, general examination and anorectal
22 examination or anorectal examination alone.

23 *Transvaginal ultrasound vs transanal ultrasound*

24 We found one small study⁶⁵ which compared the diagnostic accuracy of
25 transvaginal ultrasound vs transanal ultrasound as gold standard. Participants
26 were consecutive female patients reporting FI with a history of forceps
27 delivery (as reported in section 4.3) Transvaginal ultrasound was reported to
28 have a high specificity (88-96%) and low sensitivity (44-48%) for both internal
29 and external sphincter defect outcomes (n=36). However, not all patients were
30 faecally incontinent (n=36/48) and results were not divided up to give results
31 among this group. Therefore the findings do not reflect sensitivity or specificity
32 in incontinent patients.

33

34 **5.4.4 Cost-effectiveness evidence**

35 We did not retrieve any appropriate studies.

36

37 **5.4.5 Conclusions**

38 Despite some limitations in the studies retrieved there is some evidence that
39 digital examination is not as accurate as anal manometry at detecting
40 sphincter function. However, high sensitivities and specificities were reported,

DRAFT FOR CONSULTATION

1 although no study attempted to relate findings to patient selection for
2 treatment options or outcomes of therapy. One study concluded that transanal
3 ultrasound was more reliable than transvaginal ultrasonography at detecting
4 sphincter defects. Therefore while vaginal ultrasound may be more readily
5 available, particularly in obstetric settings, it appears not to be a good
6 predictor of anal sphincter disruption.

7 The GDG used expert opinion and consensus development methods to
8 propose recommendations on specialised management. These can be found
9 in section 5.6.

10

1 **5.5** ***Which combinations of tests effectively select***
2 ***patients for specific treatment strategies?***

3 **5.5.1 Introduction**

4 There are many different tests available for investigating patients with FI. As
5 there is no one 'gold standard' test, they are often performed in combination.
6 The clinical assessment is then considered in the light of findings to decide on
7 management options. The impression is that various tests are available in
8 different investigation units, and often the combination is currently based more
9 on historical custom or availability of equipment in that centre, rather than a
10 rational combination selected for the individual patient. It is often unclear how
11 to select the best combination of tests for an individual patient.

12 It would be helpful to know whether the results of any tests predict the
13 outcome of a specific treatment (for example, drugs, surgery, biofeedback) or
14 avoid futile treatment for any patient group. Are some tests of more relevance
15 than others for specific patients? Does any combination of tests change
16 clinical decision-making? Are some combinations redundant? What is the
17 relative cost-effectiveness of performing tests?

18

19 **5.5.2 Studies considered for this review**

20 We undertook a literature search to retrieve studies which compared a
21 combination of tests to a single test or a combination of tests to a different
22 combination of tests.

23

24 **5.5.3 Clinical evidence**

25 Our literature search found two studies which compared clinical assessment
26 with specialist tests in a before-after study design (see evidence table 16,
27 appendix D). Keating et al¹⁷ (N=50) and Liberman et al⁶⁹ (N=95) reported
28 management plans based on the findings from clinical assessment alone
29 before undertaking a number of specialist tests. The information from the
30 specialised tests together with the clinical assessment informed a second
31 management plan for each patient. Both sets of authors report the number of
32 differences between the management plans based on clinical assessment
33 alone and those based on clinical and specialised assessment.

34 The results of these studies report that between 10-30% of patients would
35 have received either unnecessary surgery or would not have received
36 appropriate surgery. However, in the absence of strong evidence for surgical
37 efficacy in the long term (see Chapter 6) the latter group is uncertain to have
38 benefited.

1 These results should be interpreted with caution; both studies were conducted
2 in specialist referral centres (the findings may not be able to be extrapolated
3 to a general community setting). In addition, it is not clear what impact the
4 findings would have had on patient outcomes, such a quality of life or
5 episodes of faecal incontinence, after treatment. The meaningfulness of the
6 concept of 'correct diagnosis' as a result of gold standard tests should also be
7 considered, especially as no gold standard is universally accepted and
8 especially when many patients have faecal incontinence as a result of
9 multifactorial problems.

10

11 **5.5.4 Cost-effectiveness evidence**

12 We did not retrieve any appropriate studies.

13

14 **5.5.5 Conclusions**

15 There is some limited evidence that clinical assessment alone cannot be
16 relied upon to provide sufficient information for a management plan for
17 patients referred to specialist centres for assessment and to be considered for
18 sphincter repair.

19 The GDG used expert opinion and consensus development methods to
20 propose recommendations on specialised management. These can be found
21 in section 5.6.

22

1 **5.6 Recommendations on specialist assessment**

2 **Healthcare professionals should refer patients with continuing faecal**
3 **incontinence after specialised conservative management for**
4 **consideration for:**

- 5 • **anorectal physiology studies**
- 6 • **endoanal ultrasound. If not available, consider MRI, endovaginal**
7 **ultrasound and perineal ultrasound**
- 8 • **other tests, possibly including proctography.**

9

10 **Rationale:** After reviewing the evidence from sections 5.1, 5.2, 5.3.1, 5.4 and
11 5.5 consulting with expert advisors and participating in a consensus
12 development exercise, the GDG decided to develop recommendations which
13 advise use of physiological, imaging and other tests as means of assessment.
14 Manometric results are known to reflect patient symptoms (for example, low
15 resting pressure correlates with passive soiling; low squeeze pressure with
16 urge symptoms). However, there are no accepted standards for performing
17 these tests and no 'normal ranges' agreed or validated. Digital examination is
18 a poor predictor of manometric findings¹⁸. However, the clinical relevance of
19 this, in terms of suggesting management options or predicting outcomes is
20 unknown. Indeed, several studies have suggested that clinical outcomes are
21 independent of changes in manometric pressures, casting doubt on the
22 relevance of figures obtained.

23 Endoanal ultrasound requires a dedicated anal probe, and as such
24 necessitates initial financial investment. However, day-to-day running costs for
25 ultrasound are very low (the probe is reusable and there is no requirement for
26 additional radiographic support). In some centres, endoanal sonography is
27 performed by trained specialist nurses, rather than medically qualified
28 personnel.

29 MRI is an expensive and scarce resource. While some MRI manufacturers
30 provide a reusable dedicated endocoil, others produce disposable coils with
31 resource implications. The per-patient cost of MRI is greater than that of
32 ultrasound, and in general access to MRI imaging in the UK is less than
33 ultrasound. MRI appears to be accurate, but ultrasound, where it is available,
34 is likely to be sufficiently accurate and more cost-effective. In experienced
35 hands, imaging findings correlate well with findings at operation. It should
36 however be recognised that such examinations are specialised and performed
37 by few UK radiologists. In those with experience, however a perineal or
38 transvaginal approach is a reasonable alternative to endoanal ultrasound.

39 One area in which endocoil MRI is currently superior to ultrasound is in the
40 diagnosis of external sphincter atrophy, although new 3D techniques may
41 improve the accuracy of ultrasound. MRI has been validated against histology
42 for external sphincter atrophy⁵⁸ but not for a tear (the latter being the more

DRAFT FOR CONSULTATION

1 recognised form of defect to date). Furthermore external sphincter atrophy
2 has been shown to adversely influence outcome in patients undergoing
3 surgical repair⁷⁰.

4 Perineal and endovaginal ultrasound show reasonable accuracy and
5 importantly do not require a specialised anal probe. They can both be
6 performed using standard probes available on most diagnostic ultrasound
7 machines in the UK.

8 Although data on the cost effectiveness and impact of imaging investigation
9 on patient management outcome is lacking, this can be said for many
10 diagnostic test routinely performed in day-to-day clinical practice. The GDG
11 developed the above recommendations using expertise and participating in a
12 consensus-building exercise.

1 **5.7 Recommendation for research**

2 The GDG identified the following priority area for research:

3 **What is the prognostic value of physiologic assessment for defining**
4 **outcome of surgery for treatment of faecal incontinence?**

5 **Why this is important:**

6 It is currently hard to predict which patients will benefit from surgical treatment
7 for faecal incontinence. Developing an improved selection procedure would
8 cut down on unnecessary procedures, cutting costs and improving patient
9 care pathways.

10 By comparing standard physiology and structural assessment (anorectal
11 physiology, pudendal nerve latencies, endoanal ultrasound) with full
12 physiological and structural assessment (including anorectal physiology,
13 pudendal nerve latencies, anorectal reflexes, rectal compliance dynamometry,
14 endoanal ultrasound and MRI) in patients referred for specialist assessment in
15 whom surgery is contemplated, a better correlative description of the
16 relationship between symptoms and physiology or structure may be drawn.
17 This in turn would allow a better selection procedure to be developed. By
18 following patients through surgery and over a long-term follow-up period, the
19 prognostic value of certain physiological/structural abnormalities in defining
20 outcome from surgery would be evaluated. An additional point of investigation
21 would be the long-term outcome of certain surgical procedures, particularly
22 sacral nerve stimulation and evacuation dysfunction surgery. The decision to
23 operate will be based on the individual indications for the procedure.

24 Using physiological and structural assessment outcomes at short and long-
25 term, a comparison between the standard vs complete assessment limbs may
26 be carried out. Additional outcomes could include a quality of life scale to gain
27 the patient perspective, and health costs to allow detailed economic
28 modelling. This research question would be best answered by a multi-centre
29 study based on a network of NHS secondary care sites.

30

1 **6 Surgical management of faecal incontinence**

2 Surgery may be appropriate for some patients who have had an
3 unsatisfactory response to conservative management. However it is essential
4 that patients receive specialist assessment to check their suitability for
5 surgery. It is vital that those undergoing surgery have realistic expectations
6 and are aware of potential complications.

7 There are a number of surgical options for faecal incontinence, these include:

8 **Sphincter Repair** - the external anal sphincter can be repaired or simply
9 tightened to try and improve control. The former applies to direct injuries such
10 as those sustained obstetrically or following surgery. An anterior sphincter
11 defect may be repaired some time after the injury. This operation is carried out
12 through a small anterior incision. The divided ends of the external anal
13 sphincter are identified and either approximated or more commonly
14 overlapped. Also known as 'sphincteroplasty' or 'direct sphincter repair'.

15 **Levatorplasty** - an alternative approach in patients with no definable
16 sphincter defect is to tighten or to plicate the external anal sphincter (EAS)
17 and pelvic floor muscles (levatorplasty). This involves bringing together the
18 muscles of the pelvic floor above the anal canal. This may be carried out
19 anterior to the anal sphincter or posteriorly. The objective is to lengthen the
20 anal canal and augment an anal sphincter repair if performed at the same
21 time. A post-anal repair is carried out between the internal and external anal
22 sphincters posteriorly and plicates the levator ani muscles, the puborectalis
23 and the external sphincter.

24 **Neosphincter** - other operations have been developed to replace the
25 sphincter when repair is not possible or has failed. These include the dynamic
26 graciloplasty (DGP), a gluteoplasty and artificial bowel sphincter (ABS). In the
27 first, the muscle is taken from the thigh and encircled around the anus. A
28 nerve stimulator is inserted to make the muscle contract tonically. The
29 gluteoplasty transposes one or both gluteus muscle from the buttock and uses
30 them to encircle the anal canal. This can be combined with an electrical
31 stimulator (stimulated gluteoplasty). The ABS is a cuff made of silicone that
32 encircles the anus and contains liquid that is transferred between a reservoir
33 and the cuff. This either opens or closes the anal canal.

34 **Internal anal sphincter repair** - attempts have been described to repair a
35 disrupted internal anal sphincter in conjunction with external anal sphincter
36 repair (described above), or as an isolated procedure. Other attempts to treat
37 internal sphincter disruption or weakness have been tried by augmenting bulk
38 into the anal canal using an island advancement flap anoplasty or by injecting
39 biocompatible materials into the IAS to increase its bulk. The application of
40 thermal injury to the anus to effect scarring and improve anal closure is
41 another method that has been reported. The Secca procedure is an example.

42 **Sacral nerve stimulation (SNS)** - a recent innovation is sacral nerve
43 stimulation. This technique involves stimulating the sacral nerves S3 or S4. Its

1 main advantage is that a trial period of temporary stimulation only involves
2 simple insertion of stimulating wires into the back is possible. If this is
3 successful, the patient can have an implantable stimulator to modulate sacral
4 nerve function and improve continence.

5 **Irrigation ports** - irrigation can be performed through the anus or if
6 unsuccessful, surgically constructed, lavage systems can be considered. One
7 option is to bring the appendix onto the abdominal wall to allow catheters to
8 be inserted into the colon (ACE or Malone operation). Liquids and laxatives
9 can be instilled to wash out the colon. Another more complicated approach is
10 to create a 'T' junction with the transverse colon to bring out a loop with a
11 continent valve onto the abdominal wall. Percutaneous endoscopic colostomy
12 (PEC) places an artificial irrigation tube into the colon, usually in the
13 descending (left) colon. The patient then washes out the colon when
14 appropriate. The major problem with PEC is that the device is foreign to the
15 body and sepsis requiring removal is common.

16 **Stoma** - a stoma (usually a colostomy) may be considered for severe
17 uncontrolled FI.

1

2 **6.1** *Is surgery effective and does it last compared with no*
3 *surgery (conservative treatment)?*

4 **6.1.1 Introduction**

5 For patients with faecal incontinence refractory to medical treatment, surgery
6 may be an option. As surgical intervention is invasive and carries the risk of
7 complications, it is important to assess the efficacy of surgery, incidence of
8 adverse events and whether results of the operation are sustained over time.

9

10 **6.1.2 Studies considered for this review**

11 Randomised and non-randomised comparative study designs were
12 considered for inclusion if they compared any surgical intervention for faecal
13 incontinence with no surgery or conservative treatment. Long-term results of
14 surgery were considered important to ascertain whether successful outcomes
15 were maintained.

16

17 **6.1.3 Clinical evidence**

18 Five studies^{56,71-74} met the inclusion criteria for this clinical question (evidence
19 table 19, appendix D). Two studies were RCTs^{56,71}, two studies were cross-
20 over trials^{73,74} (one of which was randomised⁷³) and one study was a non-
21 randomised controlled trial⁷².

22 *Levatorplasty or post-anal repair vs anal plug electrostimulation*

23 One study⁵⁶ with a total of 59 patients with disabling faecal incontinence
24 randomised patients to surgery (anterior levatorplasty for women and post-
25 anal repair for men) (n=31) or anal plug electrostimulation of the pelvic floor
26 (n=28). There was a significant improvement in physical and social handicap
27 at 3, 12 and 24 months follow-up in the surgery group. Although there was a
28 statistically significant number of patients who reported an improvement in
29 incontinence at 3 months in the levatorplasty group, this significance was lost
30 at 12 and 24 months follow-up. None of the other clinical outcomes reported
31 (less use of pads, deferring time, loose and solid stool) reached statistical
32 significance. One case of wound infection was reported in the surgery group
33 and one patient in the electrical stimulation group reported a 'burning
34 sensation in the vagina'. This study suggests only short-term benefit from
35 surgery to tighten the anal canal and pelvic floor.

36 *Artificial bowel sphincter vs supportive care*

1 O'Brien et al⁷¹ reported the results of 14 adults with severe faecal
2 incontinence who were randomised to placement of an artificial bowel
3 sphincter (Acticon neosphincter) (n=7) or supportive care (n=7). At 6 months
4 follow-up there was a significant difference between groups in the Cleveland
5 Clinic Incontinence Score favouring the artificial bowel sphincter group
6 (p=0.002) and in the American medical systems (AMS) quality of life score
7 (p=0.04) favouring the artificial bowel sphincter group. Three perioperative
8 complications were reported in the surgical group.

9 *Sacral nerve stimulation: stimulators 'on' vs 'off'.*

10 Vaizey et al⁷⁴ and Leroi et al⁷³ both report results from cross-over studies
11 during which all patients were implanted with a sacral nerve stimulator. All
12 patients had their stimulators turned 'on' or 'off' for an initial phase of the trial
13 which was immediately followed by a second phase during which the
14 stimulator was turned to the opposite setting. They both had a highly selective
15 study population as only patients that responded positively to the initial trial
16 phase were included. Although the study by Vaizey et al⁷⁴ only recruited two
17 patients, there was a large magnitude of treatment effect; the median
18 episodes of incontinence (over the two weeks test period) of solid or liquid
19 stool decreased from baseline to when stimulation was turned 'on' (12 vs. 1
20 respectively). Leroi et al⁷³ was a larger trial conducted in 27 patients. In this
21 trial the treatment effect was not so large. The median frequency of FI
22 episodes per week was 0.8 (range 0-11) during the 'on' phase compared to
23 1.9 (range 0-11) during the 'off' phase of the trial (p=<0.05).

24 In the Leroi et al study, even though the median frequency of FI episodes and
25 the Cleveland Clinic Incontinence Score were both significantly reduced when
26 the active 'on' period was compared to the 'off' period; this difference was
27 small compared with the reduction observed between the on period and the
28 baseline period. One explanation could be that there is a substantial placebo
29 response associated with SNS, in which case the results of SNS case series
30 should be treated with scepticism. However, there was a significant increase
31 in sphincter pressures in the treated group and interestingly, this increase was
32 maintained during the 'off' period of the trial. The results of both these
33 studies^{73,74} could be due to 'contamination': during the off period patients were
34 still benefiting from having the device switched on in the previous period and
35 therefore the treatment effect is diluted. The suggestion is that SNS has a
36 beneficial effect on nerve function that is prolonged for some time after
37 stimulation has ceased.

38 *Dynamic graciloplasty vs no surgery*

39 Tillen et al⁷² conducted a non-randomised controlled trial reported within an
40 HTA report with a total of 88 patients. A group of 48 patients with stomas or
41 refractory FI who underwent DGP were compared with a group of 40 patients
42 not offered surgery (standard care). At 24 months there was a significantly
43 greater change in the mean Cleveland Clinic Incontinence Score (p=0.001),
44 depression scale (p=0.05) and lifestyle scale (p<0.0001) in favour of the
45 surgery group however, this group also reported high numbers of evacuation
46 difficulties/pain (n=33), infections (n=31) and circulatory problems (n=23).

1

2 **6.1.4 Cost-effectiveness evidence**

3 We found four economic studies that compared surgery for faecal
4 incontinence with conservative management. Three were evaluating different
5 types of surgery for patients with severe intractable FI and one evaluated
6 implantation of a neuroprosthesis for patients with spinal cord injury (evidence
7 table 34, appendix D).

8 A Dutch study evaluated a case series of 43 patients undergoing DGP for
9 severe intractable FI⁷⁵. They measured the costs and quality of life before and
10 after surgery. Before surgery patients were being conservatively managed
11 with 'diapers, enemas, tissues, and diets'. Costs and quality of life were
12 observed up to 12 months post-surgery and were projected 29 years into the
13 future. They found that DGP improved quality of life (by various measures) but
14 was more costly (£19,800 vs £7,600) than conservative management. It is
15 difficult to say whether DGP is cost-effective compared with conservative
16 management because health outcomes were not measured in QALYs and
17 were based on before-after comparisons.

18 A detailed model was developed for an NHS HTA report⁷² using a case series
19 of 91 patients undergoing DGP and costs from NHS hospitals. Costs and
20 quality of life were observed up to 48 months post-surgery and were projected
21 21 years into the future. The changes over 12 months in the EQ-5D – the
22 quality of life instrument used to calculate QALYs – (+4% vs +1%) were not
23 statistically significant, although other measures of quality of life were
24 significant. In their base case analysis the authors found that DGP cost
25 £40,000 per QALY gained compared with conservative management
26 ('incontinence pads, prescriptions, some inpatient and outpatient care and
27 community health services'), which is above our threshold of £30,000 per
28 QALY gained. However, when they used costs from other specialist NHS
29 centres (rather than the Royal London Hospital where the case series was
30 based), the ratio fell to £29,000 per QALY gained. The results of the model
31 are highly contingent on the assumptions used to project the results in to the
32 future, such as the constant failure rate for DGP and the rate of conversion to
33 stoma for patients who are conservatively managed. In patients with a shorter
34 life expectancy than the base case (25 years), DGP will be less cost-effective,
35 because there is less time to offset the surgical costs with longer term cost
36 savings.

37 Both of the above studies^{72,75} additionally compared stoma formation (and
38 aftercare) with conservative management. In both cases, stoma formation was
39 considerably more costly than conservative management (£2,100 vs £400 per
40 year⁷²). Neither study presented evidence on the health gain associated with
41 stoma formation, although each suggested that the improvement in quality of
42 life was minimal.

43 The third study⁷⁶, a simple model based on two cohorts (n=49), compared
44 both sacral nerve stimulation and anal sphincter repair with conservative
45 management for patients with incapacitating FI due to a variety of causes.

1 Surgery was more costly than conservative management, although there was
2 no statistical analysis and no estimate of health gain.

3 The fourth study⁷⁷ presented a case series of 17 patients with supra-sacral
4 spinal cord injury in the USA. They found that neuro-prosthesis was cost
5 saving after 5 years compared with conventional care. In addition to the small
6 sample size and poor study design, the usefulness of this study is limited
7 because:

8 a. It was not subjected to statistical or sensitivity analysis, and

9 b. Care pathways and costs are likely to be different in this US setting
10 compared with the NHS. Moreover these results are only applicable
11 to patients with major spinal injury and are therefore not applicable
12 to the majority of patients with incapacitating FI.

13

14 **6.1.5 Conclusions**

15 The results of the Osterberg et al⁵⁶ study show that levatorplasty yielded
16 better early results than anal plug electrostimulation of the pelvic floor, but this
17 effect was lost by 1 year follow up. One comparative study was in favour of
18 the artificial bowel sphincter over supportive care⁷¹. The Tillin et al⁷² study
19 showed that patients having DGP had a significant improvement in continence
20 scores compared with the group without surgery.

21 DGP is borderline cost-effective compared with conservative management for
22 patients with severe intractable FI and a reasonably long life expectancy.
23 Stoma formation with aftercare and other forms of surgery are costly
24 compared with conservative management but there is no evidence regarding
25 their cost-effectiveness.

26 The recommendations on surgical management are in section 6.7.

1

2 **6.2 Are any surgical interventions more effective than**
3 **others?**

4 **6.2.1 Introduction**

5 Several different surgical approaches may be possible for an individual
6 patient. It is useful to compare, therefore, not only how effective surgery is for
7 faecal incontinence, but how well each type of surgery performs in a given
8 scenario compared with a different surgical intervention. For example, patients
9 with anal sphincter disruption could be eligible for overlapping or end-to-end
10 sphincter repair or sacral nerve stimulation (SNS). Injection of bulking agents
11 is also a possible management option in these patients. Patients with weak
12 but intact sphincters could have a post anal repair, pelvic floor plication
13 (levatorplasty), a total pelvic floor repair, bulking agents, or SNS. Secondary
14 procedures for failed primary interventions include repeat sphincter repair,
15 artificial bowel sphincter, dynamic graciloplasty and sacral nerve stimulation.

16

17 **6.2.2 Studies considered for this review**

18 Randomised and non-randomised comparative study designs were
19 considered for inclusion if they compared one surgical intervention for faecal
20 incontinence with another surgical intervention in adult patients with faecal
21 incontinence.

22

23 **6.2.3 Clinical evidence**

24 Four RCTs⁷⁸⁻⁸¹ and two non-randomised controlled trials^{82,83} met the inclusion
25 criteria for this clinical question (evidence table 20, appendix D). One of the
26 non-randomised controlled trials was a matched control trial⁸² while the
27 second was a non-randomised controlled trial⁸³.

28 *Post-anal repair vs levatorplasty vs total pelvic floor repair*

29 One study⁷⁹ with a total of 36 female participants with faecal incontinence
30 related to pundental neuropathy and a history of obstetric trauma randomised
31 participants to post-anal repair (n=12), anterior levatorplasty (n=12) or total
32 pelvic floor repair (n=12) groups. This study with a follow-up period of 24
33 months reported that quality of continence, frequency of continence per
34 month, continence score after total pelvic floor repair was significantly better
35 than for post-anal repair and anterior levatorplasty.

36 *Post-anal repair vs total pelvic floor repair*

1 A study by van Tets et al⁸⁰ randomised 20 female patients to either post-anal
2 repair (n=11) or total pelvic floor repair (n=9) groups. No significant
3 differences were found between clinical, manometric and radiologic outcomes
4 between the groups at the follow-up at 42 months.

5 *Total pelvic floor repair vs total pelvic floor repair with plication*

6 In a study by Deen et al⁷⁸ 33 female patients with FI related to pudendal
7 neuropathy, patients were randomised to total pelvic floor repair (n=18) or
8 total pelvic floor repair and plication of the internal anal sphincter (n=15).
9 There was no significant difference in continence scores. There was a
10 significant difference in maximum resting pressures in favour of total pelvic
11 floor repair compared to total pelvic floor repair with plication.

12 *Total pelvic floor repair vs gluteoplasty*

13 The final RCT⁸¹ reported results from 24 women with post-obstetric faecal
14 incontinence who were randomised into total pelvic floor repair (n=12) or
15 gluteoplasty groups (n=12). At a median follow-up of 10 months no significant
16 differences were found in continence scores, manometry or adverse effects
17 between the two groups.

18 *Dynamic graciloplasty: one step vs two step*

19 Rongen et al⁸² conducted a matched control study to compare the
20 effectiveness of one vs. two step dynamic graciloplasty for 26 patients with
21 faecal incontinence. The one step procedure involved the muscle wrap and
22 the implant of the electrodes and implanted pulse generator (IPG) in one
23 operation. The two-step procedure received the implant in a separate
24 operation 6 weeks after the muscle transposition. Although there was a
25 difference between the faecal incontinence, morbidity and quality of life
26 outcomes, there were not significant. The results of the trial suggest that a
27 one-step procedure is feasible and will avoid the extra admission and
28 secondary procedure of a two step approach.

29 *Sphincter repair: perineal approach vs posterior fourchette approach*

30 A non-randomised controlled trial⁸³ reported results at a mean of 22 months
31 for 50 women with sphincter injuries who underwent anterior overlap sphincter
32 repair. The first 32 underwent surgery by the perineal approach and the
33 subsequent patients by the posterior vaginal fourchette approach. Both
34 groups had significantly improved continence scores after surgery, but these
35 postoperative scores were not significantly different between the groups.
36 There was significantly more wound complications from perineal compared to
37 the posterior fourchette approach.

38 **6.2.4 Cost-effectiveness evidence**

39 We found four economic studies that compared different types of surgery for
40 faecal incontinence (evidence table 34, appendix D).

1 The first study⁸⁴ was a case series of 75 patients with severe FI undergoing
2 surgery. The authors found that total pelvic floor repair improved continence
3 and reduced costs compared with post-anal repair (£2,200 vs £2,700). There
4 were a number of limitations; not least there was no statistical analysis and
5 the follow-up periods differed between the groups.

6 A Dutch study compared a case series of 43 patients undergoing dynamic
7 graciloplasty (DGP) with seven patients undergoing stoma formation. This
8 study was described in 6.1.4. The authors found that DGP was cost-saving
9 compared with stoma formation (£19,800 vs £44,700). This study has been
10 criticised for inflating the cost of stoma care^{72,85}, which was based on only
11 seven patients.

12 A detailed model was developed for an NHS HTA report⁷² and has also been
13 described in 6.1.4 above. They found that DGP was dominant (cost saving
14 and quality of life improving) compared with stoma formation for patients being
15 conservatively managed at the outset. For patients already receiving stoma
16 care at the outset, the conversion to DGP was not cost saving but it was cost-
17 effective (between £5,000 and £15,000 per QALY gained). As noted in 6.1.4,
18 in patients with a life expectancy less than that assumed in the model (25
19 years), DGP will be less cost-effective, because there is less time to offset the
20 surgical costs with longer term cost savings.

21 The fourth study⁷⁶, a simple model described above (6.1.4). Sacral nerve
22 stimulation was substantially more costly than sphincter repair (£14,800 vs
23 £3,600) but, using data from the Dutch study above, substantially less costly
24 than DGP (£21,000) or stoma formation (£22,000), although statistical
25 analysis was not conducted.

26

27 **6.2.5 Conclusions**

28 Although Oya et al⁷⁹ showed that total pelvic floor repair is more effective in
29 improving faecal incontinence than post-anal repair or anterior levatorplasty, it
30 is currently rarely performed in clinical practice.

31 Deen et al⁸⁶ found that total pelvic floor repair significantly improved the
32 continence scores compared to levatorplasty and post-anal repair. However,
33 van Tets et al⁸⁰ found no significant difference between total pelvic floor repair
34 and post-anal repair. Another study⁷⁸ found no significant difference between
35 total pelvic floor repair with and without placcation of the internal anal sphincter.
36 Yoshioka et al⁸¹ found no significant differences between total pelvic floor
37 repair and gluteus transposition.

38 The non randomised controlled trial⁸³ found that sphincter repair by the
39 perineal approach had significantly more wound complications than the
40 posterior fourchette approach.

41 Dynamic graciloplasty is cost-effective compared with stoma care, except in
42 patients with a short life expectancy. The trial by Rongen et al⁸² suggests that

DRAFT FOR CONSULTATION

- 1 a one-step procedure should be standard practice as opposed to a two-step
- 2 procedure.
- 3 The recommendations on surgical management are in section 6.7.

1 **6.3 Do any interventions, pre or post surgery, affect the**
2 **outcome of surgery for FI?**

3 **6.3.1 Introduction**

4 This review was conducted to evaluate if any pre or post operative
5 conservative interventions would optimise the outcomes of surgery.
6 Interventions pre/post surgery may alter stool consistency, optimise muscle
7 function or promote optimal healing. Examples of interventions are
8 medications, exercises, bowel retraining, biofeedback, diet, bowel
9 management in the pre or post-operative period or a covering stoma.

10 **6.3.2 Studies considered for this review**

11 Randomised and non-randomised comparative study designs which
12 compared the effectiveness of an additional conservative therapy (pre or post
13 surgery) or surgical adjuncts compared with surgery alone at managing faecal
14 incontinence. Studies conducted in adult patients with faecal incontinence
15 were selected.

16 **6.3.3 Clinical evidence**

17 Three studies^{87, 88, 89} met the inclusion criteria for this clinical question
18 (evidence table 21, appendix D).

19 *Sphincter repair vs sphincter repair and biofeedback*

20 One study⁸⁷ with a total of 31 female participants with an external anal
21 sphincter defect and faecal incontinence for at least 12 months randomised
22 patients to either sphincter surgery (sphincter repair and levatorplasty) (n=17)
23 or sphincter surgery plus biofeedback which commenced three months post
24 surgery (n=14). This study with a follow-up period of 9 months reports
25 comparisons between groups at 3 and 12 months which are not statistically
26 significantly different in any of the functional or physiological variables.

27 *Sphincter repair and medical bowel confinement vs sphincter repair plus*
28 *regular diet*

29 One study⁸⁸ reported results in 32 adult patients with faecal incontinence
30 undergoing anal sphincter repair. Patients were randomised to receive either
31 sphincter repair plus medical bowel confinement (n=17) which consisted of a
32 clear liquid diet and loperamide and codeine phosphate until the third post-
33 operative day or to receive sphincter repair plus regular diet beginning the day
34 of the surgery (n=15). There was no statistical difference in the mean change
35 of continence score from pre to postoperatively between the two groups.
36 There was a significant difference between the groups in the first post-op
37 bowel movement 3.9 mean days in the medical bowel confinement group vs.
38 2.8 in the regular diet group (p=0.05). The authors reported no significant
39 difference in complications between the groups but the sample was too small
40 for detecting such differences.

1 *Sphincter repair with defunctioning stoma vs sphincter repair without a stoma*

2 One study⁸⁹ randomised 27 patients with faecal incontinence requiring
3 sphincter repair to additional defunctioning stoma (n=13) or no stoma (n=14).
4 There was no significant difference between groups in any of the outcomes
5 measured, for example, the Cleveland Clinic Incontinence Score,
6 complications, and hospital stay at a mean follow-up period of 34 months.

7

8 **6.3.4 Cost-effectiveness evidence**

9 We found one relevant economic study for this question (evidence table 34,
10 appendix D).

11 This study⁸⁸ mentioned in the clinical review above, was based on an RCT of
12 54 patients undergoing surgery for intractable FI. It evaluated immediate post-
13 surgical feeding with normal diet versus post-surgical bowel confinement.
14 They found no significant difference in either hospital charges (£8,000 vs
15 £6,800) or complications but the sample was small for detecting such
16 differences.

17

18 **6.3.5 Conclusions**

19 In the Nessim et al study⁸⁸ there was no significant differences between the
20 sphincter repair plus medical bowel confinement group and sphincter repair
21 plus regular diet groups.

22 Evidence from the Davis et al study⁸⁷ does not suggest that surgery plus post-
23 operative biofeedback is more effective at managing faecal incontinence as
24 compared with surgery alone. Results from the Hasegawa et al study⁸⁹ do not
25 show any significant differences between having a defunctioning stoma and
26 not having a stoma during sphincter repair.

27 The recommendations on surgical management are in section 6.7.

1

2 **6.4 Systematic review of case series**

3 **6.4.1 Introduction**

4 We undertook a systematic review of surgical case series for the treatment of
5 faecal incontinence for the following reasons:

- 6 • a small number of RCTs and non-randomised comparative trials were
7 retrieved for the clinical questions on surgery
- 8 • many of retrieved comparative studies were conducted in small patient
9 groups
- 10 • most of the retrieved comparative studies investigated the
11 effectiveness of surgical interventions which are rarely performed
- 12 • most of the retrieved comparative studies did not provide long-term
13 results.

14 Case series, by definition, do not have a control group and therefore have to
15 be interpreted with caution since observed outcomes could be attributable
16 (partly or wholly) to a placebo response or to a regression to the mean effect,
17 as well as to a real treatment response. The GDG considered this evidence
18 with these issues in mind.

19

20 **6.4.2 Inclusion criteria and methods**

21 Due to the limitations of case series discussed above, the following inclusion
22 criteria was agreed:

- 23 • reported results on sphincter repair, repeat sphincter repair, antegrade
24 irrigation, levatorplasty, post-anal repair, total pelvic floor repair,
25 bioinjectibles/sphincter bulking agents, island advancement flap
26 anoplasty, sacral nerve stimulation, dynamic graciloplasty, gluteoplasty,
27 artificial bowel sphincter +/- any conservative intervention
- 28 • reported results from at least ten truly consecutive patients with faecal
29 incontinence
- 30 • had at least 12 months follow-up
- 31 • were published after 1990.

32 In addition to standard data extraction, patients were categorised as 'cured',
33 'improved' or 'not improved' and proportions calculated. 'Cured' was defined
34 as attainment of complete continence to solid, liquid and gas. 'Improved' was
35 defined as an improvement of symptoms. In studies which did not distinguish

1 between proportion of patients that were 'cured' and 'improved', the category
2 'improvement of symptoms' may include patients that were 'cured'. The
3 category 'Not improved' included patients whose symptoms remained the
4 same or worsened following surgery. These categories were also divided into
5 two groups depending on whether the outcomes were reported by clinicians or
6 patients. The GDG acknowledged that clinician-reported outcomes and
7 patient-reported outcomes after surgery may differ; therefore both types of
8 outcomes were recorded, and considered separately. When studies reported
9 incontinence scores from patient's feedback this was considered to be a
10 patient-reported outcome. However, if scores were determined from patient's
11 case notes this was considered to be a clinician-reported outcome. Weighted
12 mean percentages of 'cured', 'improved' or 'not improved' faecal incontinence
13 were calculated to the nearest per cent for each surgical intervention using the
14 number of patients in the study at time of follow-up. Frequently studies did not
15 report outcomes amenable to all the categories used. Therefore weighted
16 means often do not total 100% for each study. Some studies did not report
17 outcomes amenable to any of these categories. Percentages of complications
18 were also recorded.

19

20 **6.4.3 Sphincter Repair**

21 29 case series^{9,70,90-116} with a total of 1379 subjects met the inclusion criteria
22 (evidence table 22, appendix D).

23 The weighted mean percentages calculated from the clinician-reported
24 outcomes are as follows; 40% of patients' reported no faecal incontinence
25 symptoms ('cured'), 47% of patients symptoms were 'improved' and 13% of
26 patients symptoms were 'not improved'.

27 The weighted mean percentages calculated from the patient-reported
28 outcomes are as follows; 29% of patients reported being 'cured', 52%
29 'improved' and 36% had 'not improved' after surgery.

30 Wound complications were reported in 20% of patients, 2% of patients had
31 bleeding complications and 12% had unknown or other complications from the
32 surgery (summary results table 1, appendix E).

33

34 **6.4.4 Repeat sphincter repair**

35 Two studies^{117,118} with a total of 46 patients met our inclusion criteria for
36 repeat sphincter repair (evidence table 23, appendix D).

37 The weighted mean percentages calculated from the patient-reported
38 outcomes are as follows; 64% of patients reported that their faecal
39 incontinence symptoms had 'improved' after surgery while 36% reported 'no
40 improvement'.

1 No complications from surgery were reported but in one study^{117,118} two
2 patients underwent further surgery for faecal incontinence (summary results
3 table 2, appendix E).

4

5 **6.4.5 Levatorplasty**

6 Two studies^{105,119} reported results from 76 patients undergoing levatorplasty,
7 both describing anterior levatorplasty (evidence table 25, appendix D). One of
8 these studies retrieved¹¹⁹ combined anterior levatorplasty with external anal
9 sphincter plication.

10 When the results from these studies were combined, 21% of patients reported
11 a 'cured' outcome, 63% reported 'improved' symptoms while 6% of patients
12 were reported by their clinicians not to have improved.

13 Six per cent of patients had wound infections. No other complications were
14 reported (summary results table 3, appendix E).

15

16 **6.4.6 Total pelvic floor repair**

17 Only one study¹²⁰ assessed the affects of total pelvic floor repair surgery
18 (evidence table 26, appendix D). Of the 57 patients available at follow-up,
19 clinicians reported 70% had improved while 30% had not improved.
20 Complications were not reported (summary results table 5, appendix E).

21

22 **6.4.7 Post-anal repair**

23 Six studies¹²¹⁻¹²⁶ with a total of 128 patients at follow-up reported results after
24 post-anal repair surgery (evidence table 24, appendix D).

25 Combined clinician-reported outcomes resulted in 35% of patients being
26 'cured' and 65% 'improved'. Fourteen per cent of patient-reported they had
27 been cured following surgery, 45% improved and 43% not improved.

28 Five per cent of patients had wound infections and a further 3% had other
29 complications (summary results table 4, appendix E).

30

31 **6.4.8 Dynamic Graciloplasty**

32 Nine studies^{127-134 135} reported results for patients undergoing dynamic
33 graciloplasty (evidence table 28, appendix D) with a total of 559 patients.

34

1 Clinicians reported that 33% of the patients were 'cured' following surgery,
2 56% had 'improved' while 45% 'not improved'. The patient-reported outcomes
3 are as follows: 29% of patients reported that they were 'cured', 73% felt they
4 were 'improved' while 15% reported that they had 'not improved' following the
5 dynamic graciloplasty. Major wound complications were reported in 37%,
6 minor wound complications in 22% and device/stimulation problems in 40% of
7 patients (summary results table 9, appendix E).

8

9 **6.4.9 Gluteoplasty**

10 One study¹²⁷ reported results for dynamic gluteoplasty in 11 patients who
11 were followed-up for 24 months (evidence table 29, appendix D). Forty-five
12 per cent of patients reported that they had 'improved' episodes of faecal
13 incontinence after surgery while 55% of patients had 'not improved'.

14 Major wound complications were reported in 36% of the patients, 18% had
15 minor wound complications and 45% had problems with their device or
16 stimulation problems (summary results table 10, appendix E).

17

18 **6.4.10 Artificial bowel sphincter**

19 13 case series^{136-148 149} were found in which 390 patients underwent
20 implantation of an artificial bowel sphincter (evidence table 30, appendix D).
21 Of the four studies which reported changes in continence outcomes, clinicians
22 reported that 80% of patients had 'improved'. One study reported that 75% of
23 patients reported having 'improved' symptoms. However, it should be noted
24 that in the remaining nine studies continence outcomes were not reported.

25 There was a high complication rate for this procedure; nineteen per cent of
26 patients had complications associated with wound infection, while 47% had
27 other complications (summary results table 11, appendix E).

28

29 **6.4.11 Island advancement flap anoplasty**

30 One study¹⁵⁰ reported a case series of 15 patients who had undergone island
31 advancement flap anoplasty to repair the internal sphincter (evidence table
32 33, appendix D).

33 No results were reported that indicated the proportion of patients cured,
34 improved or not improved. Twenty per cent of patients had a wound infection
35 following surgery (summary results table 7, appendix E).

36

1 **6.4.12 Bioinjectibles/sphincter bulking agents**

2 One study¹⁵¹ reported on 15 patients undergoing injection of a bulking agent
3 (Durasphere) to manage faecal incontinence (Evidence Table 32, Appendix
4 D). No continence data appropriate for the weighted mean proportions was
5 reported. Thirty-three per cent of patients had unspecified complications
6 (summary results table 6, appendix E).

7

8 **6.4.13 Radio frequency energy (secca procedure)**

9 One study¹⁵² reported on ten patients that underwent the SECCA procedure
10 of radio-frequency energy (evidence table 31, appendix D). No continence or
11 complication data appropriate for the weighted mean proportions was
12 reported.

13

14 **6.4.14 Sacral Nerve Stimulation**

15 Six studies^{10,153-158} were identified for sacral nerve stimulation surgery
16 (evidence table 27, appendix D). Ninety four patients were assessed by a
17 clinician for changes in faecal incontinence symptoms after surgery. Eighty
18 nine per cent of patients had 'improved'. No results were reported for 'cured'
19 patients or patients who had not improved following surgery. Five per cent of
20 patients suffered wound infection, with 15% of patients undergoing other
21 complications (summary results table 8, appendix E).

1

2 **6.5 Conclusions from surgical case series**

3 The selection process for a particular operation can be difficult. The initial
4 surgical management will depend on the severity of the clinical symptoms and
5 the anatomy of the sphincter as depicted by anal ultrasonography or MRI.

6 There is no evidence for the direct repair of the internal anal sphincter. Other
7 options may include injections of collagen or biospheres (see section 6.4.12),
8 the Secca procedure (see section 6.4.13) or island flap anoplasty (see section
9 6.4.11). None of these procedures have been subjected to long-term follow-up
10 and should be considered experimental for the present.

11 There are a large number of case series of anal sphincter repair involving a
12 total of 1379 patients. Synthesis of this evidence suggests that physician
13 reported outcomes are better than patient-reported outcomes and that there is
14 a deterioration of symptoms over time.

15 A very small number of case series were found on all other procedures with
16 almost no long term follow-up. Neosphincters are associated with high
17 reported complication rates.

18

19 *Cost-effectiveness of sacral nerve stimulation*

20 We have not found published economic evidence concerning sacral nerve
21 stimulation (SNS). However, we cautiously conclude that SNS is cost-effective
22 on the basis of the case series evidence, as follows. It has been shown that
23 dynamic graciloplasty (DGP) is borderline cost-effective (section 6.1.4). The
24 case series evidence shows that SNS has a higher effectiveness rate and has
25 fewer complications compared with DGP. Furthermore anecdotal evidence
26 suggests that compared with DGP, SNS is associated with a shorter length of
27 stay – most patients can undergo day surgery - and the costs of the SNS
28 procedure are lower. From a small sample of Trusts we have found the
29 procedural cost of SNS (permanent device) was between £6,500 and £10,500
30 compared with the £12,000 to £22,000 for DGP reported in the NHS HTA
31 report⁷². Therefore, it would seem that SNS is likely to be more cost-effective
32 than DGP, assuming that the patient cohorts are broadly similar in the severity
33 of their FI and also assuming that the longer term effectiveness, currently
34 unknown, would also favour SNS.

1 **6.6** *Research on patient views*

2 A systematic review of patient views about surgery was undertaken. Three
3 relevant studies were retrieved (evidence table 1, appendix D).

4 One study¹⁰ investigated the effect of SNS on patients' sex lives. Of the 16
5 participants, nine were sexually active, all of whom said their sexual activity
6 had been hampered by faecal incontinence. Seven of these nine reported an
7 improvement in their sexual lives after SNS, with greater improvement for
8 younger patients.

9 The second study investigated perception of success after anal sphincter
10 repair for obstetric trauma⁹. Patients rated incontinence outcomes before and
11 after the operation. 71% of patients with a successful outcome reported
12 improvement in overall bowel control. These patients were also asked to rate
13 their perceived change in incontinence symptoms. This showed a decrease in
14 time with 85% (median score) of patients perceiving an improvement at 15
15 months compared to 50% at 77 months. No patient was fully continent. The
16 results suggested that postoperative scores were affected by patients'
17 perception of success. For instance, patients who had unsuccessful
18 operations tended to rate preoperative incontinence outcomes higher than
19 patients with successful operations did. This demonstrates the difficulty in
20 using subjective assessment to evaluate interventions.

21 The third study investigated the views of 69 patients who had previously
22 undergone colostomy operation (median 59 months previously). A majority
23 thought that a stoma restricted their life 'a little' or 'not at all' (83%).
24 Satisfaction with the stoma was 9/10 (median score), although a minority
25 hated it. Five patients described life as being 'a nightmare', or 'hating
26 themselves'. However, 84% of patients claimed they would 'probably' or
27 'definitely' have the stoma again. When asked to comment on how much
28 change having a stoma made to quality of life, the median rating (from -5 to 5)
29 was +4.5. However, this patient group was a self-selected sample and may
30 not be representative.

1

2 **6.7 Recommendations**

3 **All patients considering or being considered for surgery should be**
4 **referred to a specialist surgeon to discuss:**

- 5 • **the surgical and non-surgical options appropriate for each patient**
- 6 • **the potential benefits and limitations of each option, with**
7 **particular attention to long-term results**
- 8 • **realistic expectations of the effectiveness of any surgical**
9 **procedures under consideration.**

10 **Rationale:** Although no specific evidence was retrieved for this
11 recommendation the GDG considered that it is important to have a logical
12 plan of action for the management of faecal incontinence and to provide
13 adequate information on the options.

14

15 **Patients with a full length external anal sphincter defect (with or without**
16 **an associated internal anal sphincter defect) and faecal incontinence**
17 **which restricts quality of life should be considered for sphincter repair**
18 **for defects that are 90° or greater. Patients should be given a realistic**
19 **expectation of what this operation can achieve and possible adverse**
20 **events, both in the short and long term.**

21 **Rationale:** Evidence retrieved in section 6.4.3 was considered by the GDG.
22 After consulting with expert advisors and participating in a consensus
23 development exercise the GDG made the above recommendation.

24 Identification of which symptoms trouble the patient and what can be achieved
25 by repair is essential. Thus continence to flatus can rarely be restored once
26 lost and dietary modification with medication may be more helpful. Urgency is
27 incapacitating but may not be improved by repair. In the main it is
28 incontinence to solid stools that is helped by repair. On the other hand,
29 passive soiling due to loss of internal sphincter function is rarely helped by
30 surgery.

31 Patients need to understand that the results tend to deteriorate with time so
32 this is an important consideration.

33 A patient with early onset incontinence after an obstetric or other injury to the
34 external anal sphincter or with a combined IAS defect should be considered
35 for repair. In later onset incontinence, where the defect may have been
36 present for some time, caution should be exercised since the defect may not
37 necessarily be the only cause of incontinence as it might have been expected
38 to cause symptoms earlier if that were the case. It seems reasonable only to

1 repair larger defects as smaller defects would be expected to have less
2 influence on overall continence.

3

4 **Patients with internal sphincter defects, pudendal nerve neuropathy,**
5 **multiple defects, external sphincter atrophy, loose stools or irritable**
6 **bowel syndrome should be informed that these factors are likely to**
7 **decrease the effectiveness of anal sphincter repair.**

8 **Rationale:** No specific evidence was retrieved examining conditions that
9 would lead to anal sphincter repair being less effective. After consulting with
10 expert advisors and participating in a consensus development exercise the
11 GDG recommended that patients should be informed that the effectiveness of
12 anal sphincter repair decreases with the factors described above.

13 Expert opinion suggests that most surgeons have found that it is impossible to
14 successfully repair the internal anal sphincter successfully. If passive soiling is
15 the main complaint and an IAS defect is present, then patients need to
16 understand that a successful outcome is probably not to be expected.

17 Attempts have been made to identify tests predictive of the results of sphincter
18 repair. Measurement of pudendal neuropathy has shown poor correlation with
19 outcome of sphincter repair. Nerve injury results in muscular atrophy. MRI
20 may identify atrophy and anal ultrasound also provides some qualitative
21 assessment of external anal sphincter muscle thickness.

22 Irritable bowel syndrome (IBS) and diarrhoea/loose stools are more difficult to
23 control and the outcome of repair is less predictable in patients with diarrhoea.

24

25 **Patients undergoing a sphincter repair to manage their faecal**
26 **incontinence should not routinely receive a temporary defunctioning**
27 **stoma.**

28 **Rationale:** Evidence retrieved in section 6.3.3 was considered by the GDG.
29 After consulting with expert advisors and participating in a consensus
30 development exercise the GDG recommended that a temporary defunctioning
31 stoma should not be used for routine practice during sphincter repair surgery.
32 Certain clinical situations may make a stoma advisable and this is up to
33 individual surgeons to consider.

34

35 **Patients undergoing anal sphincter repair should not receive**
36 **constipating agents in the post-operative period. Feeding should**
37 **resume as required by the patient.**

38 **Rationale:** After considering the evidence retrieved in section 6.3.3,
39 consulting with expert advisors and participating in a consensus development
40 exercise the GDG recommended that patients undergoing anal sphincter

1 repair should not receive constipating agents in the post-operative period. The
2 randomised trial⁸⁸ retrieved did not shown any benefit from this policy. Indeed
3 passage of a constipated stool days after the repair may be traumatic to the
4 sphincter repair and may prolong hospital stay.

5

6 **A trial of temporary sacral nerve stimulation should be considered for**
7 **patients with faecal incontinence where sphincter surgery is deemed**
8 **inappropriate. These may be patients with intact anal sphincters, or**
9 **those with sphincter disruption. In those with a defect contraindications**
10 **to direct repair may include atrophy, denervation, a small defect,**
11 **absence of voluntary contraction, fragmentation of the sphincter or a**
12 **poor quality muscle (see NICE interventional procedure guidance on**
13 **sacral nerve stimulation (www.nice.org.uk/IPG099)). All patients should**
14 **be informed of the potential benefits and limitations of this procedure**
15 **and should undergo a trial stimulation period of at least 2 weeks to**
16 **determine if they are likely to benefit. Patients being considered for**
17 **sacral nerve stimulation should be assessed and managed at a**
18 **specialist centre with experience of performing this procedure.**

19 **Rationale:** Evidence retrieved in section 6.4 was considered by the GDG.
20 After consulting with expert advisors and participating in a consensus
21 development exercise the GDG recommended that SNS should be
22 considered for patients with faecal incontinence where sphincter surgery is not
23 appropriate. The simplicity of a trial of SNS makes it an attractive first option
24 (section 6.4.14). A successful trial can be followed by a permanent implant.
25 For those failing an implant, the other options can be considered. Recent data
26 have suggested that SNS is successful in approximately 60% of patients
27 tested⁷³. The great advantage of temporary stimulation is it allows a trial
28 before permanent implantation. This avoids the potential morbidity associated
29 with implantation of a stimulator, and avoids unnecessary expenditure.

30 There are few long-term studies on SNS and as yet little information on which
31 groups are more likely to do well.

32 The mode of action of SNS is not clearly understood. The crossover study
33 carried out by Leroi and colleagues⁷³ found that a minority of patients selected
34 the 'Off' mode, which appeared to be effective.

35 If the longer term clinical outcomes (currently not known) turn out to be as
36 positive as the early results, then SNS will be cost-effective in patients with
37 severe life-limiting FI who have not responded to conservative management.
38 Furthermore, it is likely to be cost-saving compared with stoma formation.

39

40 **Antegrade irrigation via appendicostomy, neo-appendicostomy or**
41 **continent colonic conduit may be considered in selected patients with**
42 **constipation and colonic motility disorders associated with faecal**
43 **incontinence.**

1 **Rationale:** Although no evidence was retrieved for this recommendation, the
2 GDG made the above recommendation after consulting with expert advisors
3 and participating in a consensus development exercise. Evacuatory disorders
4 and colonic motility problems frequently co-exist with faecal incontinence.
5 These are a challenge to the clinician. On the basis that an empty rectum is
6 likely to leave the patient continent, these approaches have great appeal.
7 However, they are not simple and as in any area of surgery case selection is
8 the key. An appendicostomy is the simplest option but if the appendix has
9 been removed then options using an ileal conduit with one end
10 intussuscepted into the ascending colon are available. An alternative is the
11 continent colonic conduit. These are all quite complex procedures and not
12 effective in all patients.

13

14 **If a trial of sacral nerve stimulation is unsuccessful patients can be**
15 **considered for a neosphincter. The two options to be considered are a**
16 **dynamic graciloplasty or an artificial bowel sphincter (see NICE**
17 **interventional procedure guidance on stimulated graciloplasty**
18 **(www.nice.org.uk/IPG159)). Patients should be informed of the potential**
19 **benefits and limitations of both procedures. Patients being considered**
20 **for either procedure should be assessed and managed at a specialist**
21 **centre with experience of performing this procedure.**

22 **Rationale:** Evidence retrieved in sections 6.1.3, 6.2.3, 6.4.8 and 6.4.10 was
23 considered by the GDG. After consulting with expert advisors and participating
24 in a consensus development exercise the GDG made the above
25 recommendation. Device problems are common and revisional surgery is
26 often required. Patients needs to be highly motivated and prepared to accept
27 the prospects of failure and revisional surgery. The choice between ABS and
28 dynamic graciloplasty will depend on local expertise.

29 Dynamic graciloplasty is likely to be borderline cost-effective in patients with
30 severe life-limiting FI who have not responded to conservative management.
31 Furthermore, it is likely to be cost-saving compared with stoma formation.

32

33 **Patients with an implanted sacral nerve stimulation device, dynamic**
34 **graciloplasty or an artificial bowel sphincter should receive training and**
35 **ongoing support at a specialist centre. Patients offered this procedure**
36 **should be informed that they may experience evacuatory disorders**
37 **and/or serious infection which may necessitate removal of the device.**
38 **These patients should be monitored, have regular reviews and be given**
39 **a point of contact.**

40 **Rationale:** Evidence retrieved in section 6.1.3, 6.2.3, 6.4.8, 6.4.10 and 6.4.14
41 was considered by the GDG. After consulting with expert advisors and
42 participating in a consensus development exercise the GDG recommended
43 that following SNS, DGP or ABS patients should receive training, support and
44 regular reviews. Evacuation disorders are very frequently made worse after

1 implantation of an ABS or gracilis neosphincter. Thus it is important to select
2 patients who appear to achieve satisfactory rectal emptying.

3

4 **A stoma should be considered for patients with faecal incontinence that**
5 **severely restricts lifestyle only once all appropriate non-surgical and**
6 **surgical options, including those at specialist centres, have been**
7 **considered. Patients should be informed of the potential benefits, risks**
8 **and long-term effects of this procedure. Patients assessed as a possible**
9 **candidate for a stoma should be referred to a stoma care service.**

10 **Rationale:** Although no evidence was retrieved for this recommendation, the
11 GDG made the above recommendation after consulting with expert advisors
12 and participating in a consensus development exercise. The GDG felt that it is
13 important to counsel patients that a stoma is not necessarily a simple
14 procedure that will cure all their problems. As with any operation, there may
15 be a price to pay in terms of the outcome. Many develop defunctioned proctitis
16 that in severe cases may necessitate rectal excision. Patients are frequently
17 left with incontinence of mucus and troublesome mucus plugs. A substantial
18 proportion develop stoma related hernias and many require repair.

1 **7 Specific patient groups with faecal**
2 **incontinence**

3 There may be specific considerations for some groups of patients reporting or
4 who are reported with faecal incontinence. It is important that assumptions are
5 not made regarding the underlying aetiology of patients' faecal incontinence,
6 which is why all patients should initially receive a baseline assessment and be
7 considered for initial management options. If faecal incontinence persists
8 however, special management options should be considered for these groups.

9

1 **7.1** ***What procedures are effective in patients or residents***
2 ***in care homes with faecal incontinence related to***
3 ***faecal loading, impaction or constipation?***

4 **7.1.1 Introduction**

5 Faecal loading is the term used to describe the presence of a large amount of
6 faeces in the rectum with stool of any consistency. The term faecal impaction
7 is used when there is large amount of hard faeces in the rectum. The colon
8 may also be loaded with faeces in some patients.

9 Softer consistency stool is more likely to leak than hard stool and is more
10 difficult to contain when it does leak. Some patients with faecal incontinence
11 may have a previous history of constipation, but this is not always the case as
12 it might occur for the first time in the setting of an acute illness.

13 Many patients and care home residents are incontinent of faeces as a result
14 of faecal loading of the rectum. There may be a problem with faecal
15 incontinence when they enter the care home or it may develop during the
16 course of their care. Physical and cognitive disabilities often co-exist in these
17 residents. Faecal loading is the predominant feature contributing to faecal
18 incontinence in those who have FI.

19 The management of the problem can be divided into the initial clearance of
20 the faecal loading, followed by planning a bowel management programme in
21 the longer term to prevent recurrence.

22

23 **7.1.2 Studies considered for the review**

24 Studies were considered for this review which had compared one intervention
25 to manage faecal incontinence related to faecal loading, impaction or
26 constipation to another intervention or no intervention.

27

28 **7.1.3 Clinical evidence**

29 Two randomised controlled trials were identified that met the inclusion
30 criteria^{22,159} (evidence table 18, appendix D).

31 *Intervention vs no intervention*

32 Tobin et al²² randomised faecally incontinent patients in residential care
33 homes to receive a treatment protocol (n=52) or standard care (n=30). The
34 treatment protocol varied depending on whether the incontinence was
35 "idiopathic" (n=25) or secondary to faecal impaction (n=27). Patients with
36 faecal impaction were treated with lactulose and weekly enemas, while
37 patients with idiopathic FI were treated with codeine phosphate and enemas

1 twice a week. There was a significant reduction in incontinence in the group
2 with the treatment protocol. Twenty-seven of the 45 patients (60%)
3 randomised to the treatment protocol were no longer incontinent compared to
4 nine of the 28 (32%) patients that were not treated ($p=0.047$). When only
5 patients with full concordance in the treatment group were considered ($n=30$)
6 there were 26/30 patients no longer incontinent (87%) ($p=0.001$).

7 *Laxative + suppository + enema vs laxative alone*

8 In one study¹⁵⁹ elderly residents in long term care were randomised to receive
9 a single osmotic laxative (lactulose) plus daily glycerine suppository and a tap-
10 water enema once per week for 8 weeks or the laxative alone. All trial
11 participants had faecal incontinence with impaired rectal emptying.

12 Chassagne et al found there was a high dropout rate for the trial as only 123
13 of the 206 participants (60%) completed 5 weeks of the trial, and 101
14 participants (49%) completed the full 8 weeks of the trial. A similar number of
15 participants in each group had dropped out by week 5. Most of the dropouts
16 were due to participants being lost to follow up. At week 5 there was no
17 significant difference in the episodes of loss of faeces, soiled clothing or soiled
18 laundry.

19

20 **7.1.4 Cost-effectiveness evidence**

21 No economic evidence was found.

22

23 **7.1.5 Conclusions**

24 There was a significant reduction in incontinence in residential care home
25 patients that were given a treatment protocol (patients with faecal impaction
26 were given lactulose and enemas and if the incontinence was idiopathic they
27 received codenine phosphate and enemas) compared to patients that were
28 left untreated.

29 One study found no additional benefit from giving a glycerine suppository and
30 tap water enema to patients with impaired faecal incontinence and rectal
31 emptying that are already using an oral laxative.

32 The recommendations can be found in section 7.7.1.

1 **7.2** ***What procedures are effective in patients with limited***
2 ***mobility and faecal incontinence?***

3 **7.2.1 Introduction**

4 Faecal incontinence is a common occurrence in patients with limited mobility.
5 Continence is challenged in this group of patients as they are often dependent
6 upon others to assist them onto a toilet or commode. This may be a transient
7 feature of an acute illness, but in many people the limitations of mobility will be
8 permanent and may be associated with other disabilities which include bowel
9 dysfunction. The environment in which they are living may pose additional
10 difficulties.

11 Mobility physiotherapy, exercise or interventions to improve mobility may help
12 in both the short term and longer term.

13

14 **7.2.2 Studies considered for this review**

15 Studies were considered where participants were adults with faecal
16 incontinence and had limited mobility. Interventions considered for inclusion
17 were any mobility interventions, for example, mobility physiotherapy vs any
18 other conservative treatment, with the aim to improve mobility.

19

20 **7.2.3 Clinical evidence**

21 One RCT^{160,161} of 190 incontinent long stay nursing home residents,
22 examined an intervention of exercise, toilet prompting and incontinence care
23 (evidence table 17, appendix D). 73/92 and 74/98 patients from the
24 intervention group and the control group respectively were available for
25 assessment at the end of the 32 weeks study period. The study does not
26 differentiate between urinary or faecal incontinent patients but the baseline
27 incidence rate suggests that faecal incontinence was quite highly prevalent;
28 on average there would be five faecal incontinence events per patient per
29 fortnight. The intervention was provided by carers every 2 hours from 8.00 am
30 to 4.00 pm for 5 days a week for a period of 32 weeks. Residents were
31 encouraged to walk or, if nonambulatory, to wheel their chairs and to repeat
32 sit-to-stands using a minimum level of human assistance. During one care
33 episode per day each resident was given upper body resistance training (arm
34 curls or arm raises) usually while in bed. Before and after each care episode,
35 residents were offered fluids. Usual care was provided to the control group.

36 The intervention significantly decreased the frequency of faecal incontinence
37 (based on five checks per day) and significantly increased the appropriate
38 faecal toileting ratio (number of times a resident used a toilet or toilet
39 substitute divided by the total number of rectal evacuations).

1

2 **7.2.4 Cost-effectiveness evidence**

3 Two studies assessed the economic consequences of toilet prompting for
4 care home residents who are frail or have limited mobility (evidence table 8,
5 appendix D).

6 One cost-consequences analysis¹⁶² compared 2-hourly prompts with the aid
7 of a pneumatic lift, with standard care. The study made before and after
8 comparisons in a case series of 10 severely mobility-impaired female nursing
9 home residents in the USA. Patients were followed up for an average of 68
10 days and the control period was paradoxically the early stage of the
11 intervention. The cost of the intervention was more than offset by treatment
12 cost savings (£9.44/day vs £17.80/day) due to reduction in bed sores (20% vs
13 80%) and urinary tract infections (0% vs 60%). They claimed a statistically
14 significant improvement in faecal continence (92% vs 95%) however, 'faecal
15 continence' was not clearly defined and it seems implausible that this
16 difference could be significant in such a small sample. There were other
17 severe limitations to this study. In particular the lack of a control group has
18 great potential for bias and reporting was often unclear.

19 In a second study¹⁶¹, also a cost-consequences analysis, an intervention of 2-
20 hourly prompts plus an exercise programme was compared to standard care.
21 The evaluation was based on an RCT of 190 incontinent residents in long stay
22 beds at four nursing homes (see 'clinical evidence' in section 1.2.3). They
23 evaluated potential cost savings from the intervention by measuring the
24 incidence of 31 acute conditions (including: skin irritation, pressure ulceration,
25 respiratory infection, urinary infection, constipation, faecal impaction, pain,
26 injury, depression, weight loss, angina, stroke, hyperglycaemia, etc). The
27 overall incidence, for all 31 conditions, was reduced by 10% but this was not
28 statistically significant and therefore costs were not significantly reduced
29 (£2.20/day vs £3.40/day). They did not cost the intervention itself but they
30 note that staff time was considerable (21 minutes per patient per prompt). In
31 our own crude analysis, we estimate that there was a cost of £88 per FI
32 episode averted (unit costs table 5, appendix F). This cost would be offset in
33 part by savings due to less staff time involved with cleaning and reduced
34 laundry costs.

35

36 **7.2.5 Conclusions**

37 One RCT showed that prompting and exercise significantly reduced faecal
38 incontinence frequency. There was an increased cost associated with this
39 intervention due to the intensive involvement of staff. Without quality of life
40 data, it is difficult to assess whether this intervention is or is not cost-effective.
41 The GDG therefore decided by expert opinion and consensus development to
42 make recommendations for this clinical question. The recommendations can
43 be found in section 7.7.2.

1 **7.3** ***In patients who report faecal incontinence who are***
2 ***using enteral nutritional support, what is the effect of***
3 ***lactose free nutritional intervention vs nutritional***
4 ***intervention containing lactose on patient related***
5 ***outcomes?***

6 **7.3.1 Introduction**

7 Faecal incontinence (FI) can be exacerbated by diarrhoea. There is a high
8 incidence of diarrhoea and faecal incontinence in critically ill patients. FI also
9 occurs frequently in those with long term conditions receiving enteral tube
10 feeds and in frail elderly patients on enteral sip feeding supplementation. The
11 cause of FI in these cases is likely to be due either to faecal loading/impaction
12 or true diarrhoea. In all groups lack of fibre and/or lactose intolerance may
13 play a role. An enteral feed with fibre may alter bowel transit time and also
14 have a prebiotic effect in the colon. Most manufacturers now produce a range
15 of tube and sip feeds with at least one with fibre (or a mixture of sources of
16 fibre) as well as lactose free feeds.

17 Faecal incontinence may be reduced or prevented by changing the type of
18 enteral feed or mode of administration. Reducing the incidence of faecal
19 incontinence in patients on enteral nutritional support improves patient's
20 dignity and comfort. A patient on supplementary sip feeding is more likely to
21 be concordant if there is a reduced incidence of diarrhoea. The burden/work
22 load on nurses and carers is likely to be less. Reducing the incidence of
23 FI/diarrhoea in the frail older people may reduce the incidence of falls caused
24 by rushing to the toilet.

25

26 **7.3.2 Studies considered for this review**

27 Studies were considered where participants were adults with faecal
28 incontinence and using enteral tube or sip feeding. Comparisons of interest
29 included lactose containing feed vs a lactose free feed, feed via continuous
30 drip vs a bolus feeding and a feed with fibre vs a standard enteral feed.

31

32 **7.3.3 Clinical evidence**

33 We did not retrieve any appropriate studies.

34

35 **7.3.4 Cost-effectiveness evidence**

36 We did not retrieve any appropriate studies.

1

2 **7.3.5 Conclusions**

3 As no appropriate evidence was retrieved for this clinical question, the GDG
4 used a consensus development exercise and expert opinion to develop
5 recommendations (section 7.7.3).

1 **7.4** ***In patients who report faecal incontinence using***
2 ***antibiotics, what is the effect of probiotics vs no***
3 ***probiotics on patient related outcomes?***

4 **7.4.1 Introduction**

5 Antibiotic therapy can disturb flora and may precipitate diarrhoea. Probiotics
6 may modulate this effect.

7

8 **7.4.2 Studies considered for this review**

9 Studies considered for this clinical question evaluated the effectiveness of a
10 probiotic compared to no intervention in adult patients reporting or who are
11 reported with faecal incontinence.

12

13 **7.4.3 Clinical evidence**

14 We did not retrieve any appropriate studies.

15

16 **7.4.4 Cost-effectiveness evidence**

17 We did not retrieve any appropriate studies.

18

19 **7.4.5 Conclusions**

20 We did not retrieve any evidence for this clinical question. No
21 recommendation is made in relation to this clinical question.

22

1 **7.5 Patients with severe cognitive impairment**

2 Continence is a behaviour that is learnt during early childhood but is lost in
3 many people with severe cognitive impairment. Minor memory difficulty in
4 early Alzheimer's disease or other conditions would be unlikely to contribute to
5 loss of continence but faecal incontinence is very common in people with
6 advanced disease.

7 The cognitive impairment in these patients will interact with other contributory
8 factors to lead to incontinence episodes or inappropriate defaecation or other
9 behavioural abnormalities to which frontal lobe dysfunction will feature
10 prominently. The behavioural changes will include indifference, lack of insight,
11 and social disinhibition which may lead to passive or active soiling.

12 Passive soiling refers to episodes when there loss of awareness the presence
13 of faeces in the rectum and its subsequent leakage. This would also apply to
14 patients who passively leak faeces due to loss of consciousness due to the
15 effects of illness, for example coma or to a lesser extent with sedating
16 medications.

17 Active soiling refers to 'incontinence' episodes that occur as a consequence of
18 an abnormal behaviour. Examples of these include the use of inappropriate
19 receptacle, for example: laundry basket; parcelling, that is, wrapping and
20 concealing; or smearing.

21 The specialised assessment of a patient with severe cognitive dysfunction
22 might include a search for the following: neuropsychological dysfunction which
23 includes loss of goal-directed ability, disorientation, aphasia, agnosia,
24 unilateral visual inattention, apraxia, frontal lobe apathy, dysexecutive
25 syndrome; clinical depression; psychological motivation (for example: apathy,
26 fear, embarrassment, curiosity, self-determination); manipulation; attention-
27 seeking and spite; and over-dependency (for example, the consequence of
28 de-skilling that evolves as a result of institutionalisation).

29 The assessment is likely to also include observations and functional analysis
30 and lead to specific interventions founded on structured goal planning that
31 might aim to resolve as well as manage faecal incontinence.

32 People with severe and profound learning disabilities may have had faecal
33 incontinence from childhood and be labelled as having encopresis. Others
34 may experience faecal incontinence for the first time in adulthood. It is also
35 possible that neurological conditions affecting the bowel will co-exist. It is
36 essential that these patients follow the same initial care pathway as other
37 patients with faecal incontinence. Achieving equal outcomes for people with
38 learning disabilities often means making adjustments. It is important that
39 someone with a learning disability understands what they have to do with their
40 treatment. Information should be provided in 'Easy Read' /or pictures if
41 appropriate. Specialist learning disability providers should support people with
42 learning disabilities in accessing treatment for faecal incontinence in primary,
43 secondary and tertiary care.

1 No RCTs or non-randomised comparative trials which evaluated the clinical
2 and cost-effectiveness of interventions to manage faecal incontinence in
3 patients with severe cognitive impairment were retrieved. Expert opinion and
4 consensus development was used to develop recommendations for this
5 patient group as they have specific considerations outlined below. The
6 recommendations can be found in section 7.7.4.

7

8

9

10

11

12

1 **7.6** *Patients with neurological or spinal disease/injury*

2 These patients differ from non-neurologically impaired patients since the
3 changes in bowel motility, anal sphincter control and manual dexterity
4 contribute to the frequent grossly impaired ability to control bowel function.
5 Faecal incontinence is more prevalent in neurologically impaired patients than
6 in age and gender-matched controls, and management of their condition is
7 often radically different due to the different contributing causes of the
8 symptom^{163,164}.

9 No RCTs or non-randomised comparative trials which evaluated the clinical
10 and cost-effectiveness of interventions specifically to manage faecal
11 incontinence in patients with neurological or spinal disease/injury were
12 retrieved. Expert opinion and consensus development was used to develop
13 recommendations for this specific patient group in section 7.7.5.

14

1 **7.7 Recommendations**

2 **When assessing faecal incontinence healthcare professionals should:**

- 3 • **be aware that faecal incontinence is a symptom, often with**
4 **multiple contributory factors for an individual patient**
- 5 • **avoid making simplistic assumptions that causation is related to a**
6 **single primary diagnosis ('diagnostic overshadowing').**

7 **Rationale:** No specific evidence to support this recommendation was
8 retrieved however, the GDG wanted to draw attention to the risk of assuming
9 that all FI symptoms are secondary to a primary diagnosis, and therefore
10 irreversible. The Disability Equality Duty¹⁶ requires health professionals to
11 take disability and consequent diagnostic overshadowing into account. This is
12 important for this guideline as many causes of FI may be unrelated to a
13 primary diagnosis.

14

15 **Healthcare professionals should consider a proactive approach to bowel**
16 **management for the following groups of patients:**

- 17 • **patients with neurological or spinal disease/injury resulting in**
18 **faecal incontinence due to complete loss of voluntary control**
- 19 • **patients with limited mobility**
- 20 • **people with faecal loading or constipation**
- 21 • **hospitalised patients who are acutely unwell and develop acute**
22 **faecal loading and associated incontinence**
- 23 • **patients with acquired brain injury**
- 24 • **patients with cognitive or behavioural issues**
- 25 • **people with learning disabilities.**

26 **Rationale:** After consulting with expert advisors and participating in a
27 consensus development exercise the GDG decided to recommend a proactive
28 approach to bowel management should be considered for the above specific
29 groups, as many patients in these groups will not be able to maintain
30 continence without active planning of bowel care. A balance must be achieved
31 between constipation and FI.

32

1 **7.7.1 Patients with faecal loading contributing to faecal**
2 **incontinence**

3 **Patients in whom acute severe faecal loading is identified as**
4 **contributing to faecal incontinence should initially be offered a rectally**
5 **administered treatment to satisfactorily clear the bowel. This will often**
6 **require treatments to be repeated daily for a few days. The interventions**
7 **should be offered in the following order, depending on tolerance and if**
8 **satisfactory bowel clearance is achieved;**

- 9 • glycerine suppositories
- 10 • bisacodyl suppositories
- 11 • micro enemas
- 12 • phosphate enemas.

13

14 **If these interventions are not appropriate and/or fail to satisfactorily**
15 **clear the bowel and bowel obstruction has been excluded as possible**
16 **cause, a potent oral laxative should be offered. Patients should be**
17 **informed that oral laxatives may cause griping abdominal pain, loose**
18 **stools and prolonged bowel activity. Toilet access should be ensured.**

19

20 **Healthcare professionals involved in the management of faecal**
21 **incontinence associated with chronic ongoing faecal loading/impaction**
22 **should aim to reduce the chance of recurrence by recommending a**
23 **combination of initial management options tailored to the individual**
24 **patient (see recommendation in section 3.15). If this fails, consider use**
25 **of orally administered laxatives to promote bowel emptying. Rectally**
26 **administered preparations should be used if use of oral laxatives**
27 **produces faecal incontinence episodes and there is a need to produce**
28 **planned bowel evacuations.**

29

30 **Rationale:** After considering the evidence in section 0, consulting with expert
31 advisors and participating in a consensus development exercise, the GDG
32 decided to recommend that patients with acute severe faecal loading
33 contributing to FI should be offered a rectally administered treatment to clear
34 the bowel. These recommendations formed a step-wise approach to the initial
35 assessment and treatment of this specific group of patients. This is the most
36 common cause of FI in frail older and dependent people. While the exact
37 mechanism is poorly understood, if the bowel can be effectively cleared
38 continence is likely to be restored. There is a high risk of recurrent loading,
39 and so ongoing management plans are needed.

1 **7.7.2 Patients with limited mobility and faecal incontinence**

2 **Patients with limited mobility who continue to have episodes of faecal**
3 **incontinence after initial management should be offered a regimen**
4 **which will produce a planned, predicted bowel action when carers are**
5 **present. This may be achieved by a combination oral or rectal laxatives**
6 **and/or constipating agents. This regimen should also consider:**

- 7 • **toilet access (see recommendations in 3.15.3)**
- 8 • **appropriate disposable products (see recommendations in 3.15.5)**
- 9 • **that the stool needs to be in the rectum at the time of the planned**
10 **bowel action.**

11

12 **Rationale:** After considering the evidence in section 7.2, consulting with
13 expert advisors and participating in a consensus development exercise, the
14 GDG decided to highlight these simple common sense measures for people
15 with limited mobility.

16

17 **7.7.3 Patients using enteral tube feeding and reporting faecal**
18 **incontinence**

19 **Healthcare professionals should ensure that patients reporting faecal**
20 **incontinence who are receiving enteral tube feeding have their type and**
21 **timing of feed modified on an individual basis to establish the most**
22 **effective way to manage faecal incontinence.**

23 **Rationale:** No specific evidence evaluating the effectiveness of lactose or
24 lactose-free nutritional intervention for patients who are using enteral
25 nutritional support was retrieved. After consulting with expert advisors and
26 participating in a consensus development exercise the GDG decided that as
27 tube feeding can lead to diarrhoea in some patients that the feed content
28 should be modified to each individuals needs.

29

30 **7.7.4 Patients with severe cognitive impairment contributing to**
31 **faecal incontinence**

32 **Patients with confirmed severe cognitive impairment should be**
33 **assessed using a behavioural and functional analysis to determine the**
34 **nature of, and reason for the behavioural presentation of faecal**
35 **incontinence. Following assessment, patients should be offered cause-**
36 **specific interventions founded on structured goal planning that aim to**
37 **resolve as well as manage faecal incontinence.**

1

2 **Rationale:** No specific evidence for this patient group was retrieved. The
3 GDG participated in a consensus development exercise and based this
4 recommendation on expert opinion.

5 A behavioural analysis should be conducted through observation or
6 discussion to establish the relationship between the environment and faecal
7 incontinence. This will determine the approximate times, location and context
8 of faecal incontinence (antecedents), and reaction by self and others to faecal
9 incontinence (consequences).

10 A functional analysis should be conducted as the causes of faecal
11 incontinence in moderate/severe cognitive impairment are often multifactorial.
12 A functional analysis builds on the empirical rigour of a behavioural analysis to
13 identify the function of faecal incontinence.

14 Classification of common causes of faecal incontinence assists a functional
15 analysis; neurologically disinhibited rectum, neuropsychological dysfunction
16 (for example, loss of goal-directed ability, disorientation, aphasia, agnosia,
17 unilateral visual inattention, apraxia, frontal lobe apathy, dysexecutive
18 syndrome), clinical depression, psychological motivation (for example, apathy,
19 fear, embarrassment, curiosity, self-determination), manipulation, attention-
20 seeking and spite, and over-dependency (for example, the consequence of
21 de-skilling that evolves as a result of institutionalisation).

22 After conducting a robust observation and functional analysis healthcare
23 professionals should offer patients with confirmed severe cognitive impairment
24 related FI cause-specific interventions founded on structured goal planning
25 that aim to resolve as well as manage FI.

26 Multimodal intervention should be considered as a preventative methodology
27 for patients in care homes. The clinical protocol constitutes a global response
28 to the known causes of FI. It endeavours to avoid, compensate for or
29 accommodate the reasons for faecal incontinence in cases of moderate-
30 severe cognitive impairment.

31

32 **7.7.5 Patients with neurological or spinal disease/injury resulting** 33 **in faecal incontinence**

34 **Patients with neurological or spinal disease/injury resulting in faecal**
35 **incontinence due to complete loss of voluntary control who continue to**
36 **have episodes of faecal incontinence after initial management should be**
37 **offered a bowel management programme which aims to achieve a**
38 **predictable routine and avoid faecal incontinence and severe**
39 **constipation. Management should involve progressing through the**
40 **following steps until satisfactory bowel habit is established:**

- 41 • **ascertaining patient preferences**

- 1 • **ascertaining pre-morbid bowel habit, if possible**
- 2 • **maximising patient's understanding of normal bowel function and**
3 **how it has been altered**
- 4 • **modifying diet and/or administration of rectal evacuants and/or**
5 **oral laxatives, adjusted to individual response, to attempt to**
6 **establish a predictable pattern of bowel evacuation**
- 7 • **consideration of digital anorectal stimulation for patients with a**
8 **spinal cord injury and those with other neurogenic bowel**
9 **disorders**
- 10 • **consideration of manual/digital removal of faeces, particularly for**
11 **patients with a lower spinal injury if there is a hard plug of faeces**
12 **in the rectum, presence of faecal impaction, incomplete**
13 **defaecation, an inability to defaecate and/or all other bowel**
14 **emptying techniques have failed to achieve bowel emptying and**
15 **continence in a reasonable time.**

16

17 **Healthcare professionals should consider the following management**
18 **options for a patient unable to achieve reliable bowel continence after a**
19 **neurological bowel management programme:**

- 20 • **coping and long term management strategies for symptomatic**
21 **patients (see recommendations in 3.15.5 and 3.15.6)**
- 22 • **rectal irrigation if feasible**
- 23 • **a stoma or other surgical options if faecal incontinence or time**
24 **taken for bowel emptying imposes major limits on lifestyle.**

25 **Rationale:** No specific evidence was retrieved that considered the
26 effectiveness of management of FI in patients with neurological or spinal
27 disease/injury. However, after consulting with expert advisors and
28 participating in a consensus development exercise the GDG decided to
29 recommend that this group follow a progression of management steps to
30 establish a satisfactory bowel habit. In addition, the GDG recommended that
31 those patients that could not achieve this should consider other alternatives
32 such as coping strategies. Patients with neurological or spinal disease/injury,
33 there is delay in colonic transit and in-coordination of rectal and anal sphincter
34 function^{164,165}. The management of the former may result in worsening faecal
35 incontinence due to the latter, and management must take in to account
36 patient and carer preference and what is practically available to the patient.
37 Multi-modal assessment and intervention is required to deal with the burden of
38 faecal incontinence in these patients.

39

1 **7.7.6 Recommendations on other specific groups**

2 **Healthcare professionals should consider a faecal collection bag for**
3 **patients in intensive care settings and patients receiving palliative care**
4 **who report or are reported with faecal incontinence and associated**
5 **loose stools who are not undergoing active treatment.**

6 **Rationale:** No specific evidence evaluating the effectiveness of a faecal
7 collection bag for patients in intensive care or receiving palliative care was
8 retrieved. After consulting with expert advisors and participating in a
9 consensus development exercise the GDG decided to recommend the use of
10 a faecal collection bag in these specific groups as severe uncontrolled
11 diarrhoea is a threat to skin integrity and a major nursing care problem.

1 **7.8 Recommendation for research**

2 The GDG identified the following priority area for research:

3 **Does a bowel management programme for older people in care homes**
4 **improve faecal incontinence, constipation and patients' and carer's**
5 **perceptions of quality of care?**

6 Why this is important:

7 Over 50% of older people in care homes suffer from bowel related problems.
8 This is the cause of much anxiety and discomfort for patients, as well as
9 adding to the carer burden. Moreover, with the UK's ageing population, this
10 problem will only increase with time. Little research has been done on
11 effective bowel care in this population, and care is expensive (laxatives, pads
12 and carer time) all contributing to the overall cost.

13 A management program for this population may provide a way to improve
14 quality of patient and carer lives, and improve overall healthcare.

15

16

17

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38

Bibliography

1. Macmillan AK, Merrie AE, Marshall RJ, Parry BR. The prevalence of fecal incontinence in community-dwelling adults: a systematic review of the literature. *Diseases of the Colon and Rectum* 2004, **47**(8):1341-9.
2. Perry S, Shaw C, McGrother C, Matthews RJ, Assassa RP, Dallosso H *et al*. Prevalence of faecal incontinence in adults aged 40 years or more living in the community. *Gut* 2002, **50**(4):480-4.
3. Chelvanayagam S, Norton C. Quality of life with faecal continence problems. (Role of patient focus groups in developing a quality of life measure for faecal incontinence. 19 refs). *Nursing Times: NT Plus Supplement* 2000, **96**(31):15-7.
4. Collings S, Norton C. Women's experiences of faecal incontinence: a study. *British Journal of Community Nursing* 2004, **9**(12):520-3.
5. Forbat L. Listening to carers talking about the subjects of continence and toileting. *Nursing Times* 2004, **100**(2):46-9.
6. Norton C, Burch J, Kamm MA. Patients' views of a colostomy for fecal incontinence. *Diseases of the Colon and Rectum* 2005, **48**(5):1062-9.
7. Rizk DE, Hassan MY, Shaheen H, Cherian J, V, Micallef R, Dunn E. The prevalence and determinants of health care-seeking behavior for fecal incontinence in multiparous United Arab Emirates females. *Diseases of the Colon and Rectum* 2001, **44**(12):1850-6.
8. Wong L. Incontinence has different meanings for different people. *Australian Journal of Advanced Nursing* 1995, **13**(1):6-15.
9. Malouf AJ, Norton CS, Engel AF, Nicholls RJ, Kamm MA. Long-term results of overlapping anterior anal-sphincter repair for obstetric trauma. *Lancet* 2000, **355**(9200):260-5.
10. Jarrett MED, Nicholls RJ, Kamm MA. Effect of sacral neuromodulation for faecal incontinence on sexual activity. *Colorectal Disease* 2005, **7**(5):523-5.
11. National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence. The guidelines manual <http://www.nice.org.uk/page.aspx?o=308639>
12. National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence. (2005) Guideline development methods: information for national collaborating centres and guideline developers. London: National Institute for Clinical Excellence.

- 1 13. National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence. Social value
2 judgement - principles for the development of NICE guidance (final
3 report) <http://www.nice.org.uk/page.aspx?o=svguidance> [accessed 1-
4 5-2006].
5
- 6 14. The Partnership on Long-term Conditions. (2005) 17 million reasons:
7 unlocking the potential of people with long-term conditions. London: NHS
8 Confederation.
9
- 10 15. Paterson J, Dunn S, Kowanko I, van Loon A, Stein I, Pretty L. Selection
11 of continence products: perspectives of people who have incontinence
12 and their carers. *Disability and Rehabilitation* 2003, **25**(17):955-63.
- 13 16. Disability Rights Commission. (2005) The duty to promote disability
14 equality: statutory duty of practice, England and Wales. Stratford upon
15 Avon: Disability Rights Commission.
16
- 17 17. Keating JP, Stewart PJ, Evers AA, Warner D, Bokey EL. Are special
18 investigations of value in the management of patients with fecal
19 incontinence? *Diseases of the Colon and Rectum* 1997, **40**(8):896-901.
- 20 18. Sultan AH, Kamm MA, Talbot IC, Nicholls RJ, Bartram CI. Anal
21 endosonography for identifying external sphincter defects confirmed
22 histologically. *British Journal of Surgery* 1994, **81**(3):463-5.
- 23 19. Bliss DZ, McLaughlin J, Jung HJ, Lowry A, Savik K, Jensen L.
24 Comparison of the nutritional composition of diets of persons with fecal
25 incontinence and that of age-and gender-matched controls. *Journal of*
26 *Wound, Ostomy and Continence Nursing* 2000, **27**(2):90-7.
- 27 20. Bliss DZ, Jung HJ, Savik K, Lowry A, LeMoine M, Jensen L *et al.*
28 Supplementation with dietary fiber improves fecal incontinence.
29 *Nursing Research* 2001, **50**(4):203-13.
- 30 21. Lauti, M., Scott, D., and Thompson-Fawcett, M. W. Dietary fiber and
31 loperamide for faecal incontinence in adults, a randomized double-blind
32 cross-over trial [in press]. *Diseases of the Colon and Rectum* 2006.
- 33 22. Tobin GW, Brocklehurst JC. Faecal incontinence in residential homes
34 for the elderly: prevalence, aetiology and management. *Age and*
35 *Ageing* 1986, **15**(1):41-6.
- 36 23. Read M, Read NW, Barber DC, Duthie HL. Effects of loperamide on
37 anal sphincter function in patients complaining of chronic diarrhea with
38 fecal incontinence and urgency. *Digestive Diseases and Sciences*
39 1982, **27**(9):807-14.
- 40 24. Sun WM, Read NW, Verlinden M. Effects of loperamide oxide on
41 gastrointestinal transit time and anorectal function in patients with

- 1 chronic diarrhoea and faecal incontinence. *Scandinavian Journal of*
2 *Gastroenterology* 1997, **32**(1):34-8.
- 3 25. Hallgren T, Fasth S, Delbro DS, Nordgren S, Oresland T, Hultén L.
4 Loperamide improves anal sphincter function and continence after
5 restorative proctocolectomy. *Digestive Diseases and Sciences* 1994,
6 **39**(12):2612-8.
- 7 26. Carapeti EA, Kamm MA, Nicholls RJ, Phillips RK. Randomized,
8 controlled trial of topical phenylephrine for fecal incontinence in patients
9 after ileoanal pouch construction. *Diseases of the Colon and Rectum*
10 2000, **43**(8):1059-63.
- 11 27. Carapeti EA, Kamm MA, Phillips RK. Randomized controlled trial of
12 topical phenylephrine in the treatment of faecal incontinence. *British*
13 *Journal of Surgery* 2000, **87**(1):38-42.
- 14 28. Kusunoki M, Shoji Y, Ikeuchi H, Yamagata K, Yamamura T,
15 Utsunomiya J. Usefulness of valproate sodium for treatment of
16 incontinence after ileoanal anastomosis. *Surgery* 1990, **107**(3):311-5.
- 17 29. Hu TW, Kaltreider DL, Igou JF. Disposable versus reusable incontinent
18 products: a controlled cost-effectiveness experiment. *Ostomy/Wound*
19 *Management* 1988, **21**:46-53.
- 20 30. Silberberg FG. A hospital study of a new absorbent bed pad for
21 incontinent patients. *Medical Journal of Australia* 1977, **1**(16):582-6.
- 22 31. Brown DS. Diapers and underpads, Part 1: Skin integrity outcomes.
23 *Ostomy/Wound Management* 1994, **40**(9):20-8.
- 24 32. Harper DW, O'Hara PA, Lareau J, Cass J, Black E, Stewart A.
25 Reusable versus disposable incontinent briefs: A multiperspective
26 crossover clinical trial. *Journal of Applied Gerontology* 1995, **14**(4):391-
27 407.
- 28 33. Deutekom M, Dobben A. Plugs for containing faecal incontinence.
29 *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews* 2005, **Issue 3**:CD005086.
- 30 34. Pfrommer W, Holschneider AM, Loffler N, Schauff B, Ure BM. A new
31 polyurethane anal plug in the treatment of incontinence after anal
32 atresia repair. *Eur J Pediatr Surg* 2000, **10**(3):186-90.
- 33 35. Van Winckel M. Clinical evaluation of a new anal medical device to
34 achieve faecal continence in spina bifida or anal atresia patients.
35 [unpublished data] 2005.
- 36 36. Hu T-W, Kaltreider DL, Igou J. The cost-effectiveness of disposable
37 versus reusable diapers. A controlled experiment in a nursing home.
38 *Journal of Gerontological Nursing* 1990, **16**(2):19-24.

- 1 37. Brown DS. Diapers and underpads, part 2: cost outcomes.
2 *Ostomy/Wound Management* 1994, **40**(9):34-44.
- 3 38. Brazzelli M, Shirran E, Vale L. Absorbent products for containing
4 urinary and/or fecal incontinence in adults. *Journal of Wound, Ostomy*
5 *and Continence Nursing* 2002, **29**(1):45-54.
- 6 39. Anthony D, Barnes E, Malone-Lee J, Pluck R. A clinical study of
7 Sudocrem in the management of dermatitis due to the physical stress
8 of incontinence in a geriatric population. *Journal of Advanced Nursing*
9 1987, **12**(5):599-603.
- 10 40. Cooper P, Gray D. Comparison of two skin care regimes for
11 incontinence. *British Journal of Nursing* 2001, **10**(6 Suppl):S6, S8, S10
12 passim.
- 13 41. Byers PH, Ryan PA, Regan MB, Shields A, Carta SG. Effects of
14 incontinence care cleansing regimens on skin integrity. *Journal of*
15 *Wound, Ostomy and Continence Nursing* 1995, **22**(4):187-92.
- 16 42. Warshaw E, Nix D, Kula J, Markon CE. Clinical and cost effectiveness
17 of a cleanser protectant lotion for treatment of perineal skin breakdown
18 in low-risk patients with incontinence. *Ostomy/Wound Management*
19 2002, **48**(6):44-51.
- 20 43. Zehrer CL, Lutz JB, Hedblom EC, Ding L. A comparison of cost and
21 efficacy of three incontinence skin barrier products. *Ostomy Wound*
22 *Manage* 2004, **50**(12):51-8.
- 23 44. Finch S, Doyle W, Lowe C, Bates CJ, Prentice A, Smithers G *et al.*
24 (1998) National diet and nutrition survey: people aged 65 years and
25 over. Volume 1: Report of the diet and nutrition survey. London: The
26 Stationary Office.
27
- 28 45. Glazener CM, Herbison GP, Wilson PD, MacArthur C, Lang GD, Gee H
29 *et al.* Conservative management of persistent postnatal urinary and
30 faecal incontinence: randomised controlled trial. *BMJ* 2001,
31 **323**(7313):593-6.
- 32 46. Glazener CMA, Herbison GP, MacArthur C, Grant A, Wilson PD.
33 Randomised controlled trial of conservative management of postnatal
34 urinary and faecal incontinence: six year follow up. *BMJ* 2005,
35 **330**(7487):337.
- 36 47. Ilnyckyj A, Fachnie E, Tougas G. A randomized-controlled trial
37 comparing an educational intervention alone vs education and
38 biofeedback in the management of faecal incontinence in women.
39 *Neurogastroenterology and Motility* 2005, **17**(1):58-63.

- 1 48. Norton C, Chelvanayagam S, Wilson-Barnett J, Redfern S, Kamm MA.
2 Randomized controlled trial of biofeedback for fecal incontinence.
3 *Gastroenterology* 2003, **125**(5):1320-9.
- 4 49. Solomon MJ, Pager CK, Rex J, Roberts R, Manning J. Randomized,
5 controlled trial of biofeedback with anal manometry, transanal
6 ultrasound, or pelvic floor retraining with digital guidance alone in the
7 treatment of mild to moderate fecal incontinence. *Diseases of the*
8 *Colon and Rectum* 2003, **46**(6):703-10.
- 9 50. Miner PB, Donnelly TC, Read NW. Investigation of mode of action of
10 biofeedback in treatment of fecal incontinence. *Digestive Diseases and*
11 *Sciences* 1990, **35**(10):1291-8.
- 12 51. Fynes MM, Marshall K, Cassidy M, Behan M, Walsh D, O'Connell PR
13 *et al.* A prospective, randomized study comparing the effect of
14 augmented biofeedback with sensory biofeedback alone on fecal
15 incontinence after obstetric trauma. *Diseases of the Colon and Rectum*
16 1999, **42**(6):753-8.
- 17 52. Heymen S, Pikarsky AJ, Weiss EG, Vickers D, Noguerras JJ, Wexner
18 SD. A prospective randomized trial comparing four biofeedback
19 techniques for patients with faecal incontinence. *Colorectal Disease*
20 2000, **2**(2):88-92.
- 21 53. Norton C, Cody JD, Hosker G. Biofeedback and/or sphincter exercises
22 for the treatment of faecal incontinence in adults. *Cochrane Database*
23 *of Systematic Reviews* 2006, **Issue 3**:CD002111.
- 24 54. Byrne CM, Solomon MJ, Rex J, Young JM, Heggie D, Merlino C.
25 Telephone vs. face-to-face biofeedback for fecal incontinence:
26 comparison of two techniques in 239 patients. *Diseases of the Colon*
27 *and Rectum* 2005, **48**(12):2281-8.
- 28 55. Mahony RT, Malone PA, Nalty J, Behan M, O'Connell PR, O'Herlihy C.
29 Randomized clinical trial of intra-anal electromyographic biofeedback
30 physiotherapy with intra-anal electromyographic biofeedback
31 augmented with electrical stimulation of the anal sphincter in the early
32 treatment of postpartum fecal incontinence. *American Journal of*
33 *Obstetrics and Gynecology* 2004, **191**(3):885-90.
- 34 56. Osterberg A, Edebol Eeg-Olofsson K, Hålldén M, Graf W. Randomized
35 clinical trial comparing conservative and surgical treatment of
36 neurogenic faecal incontinence. *British Journal of Surgery* 2004,
37 **91**(9):1131-7.
- 38 57. Norton C, Gibbs A, Kamm MA. Randomized, controlled trial of anal
39 electrical stimulation for fecal incontinence. *Diseases of the Colon and*
40 *Rectum* 2006, **49**(2):190-6.

- 1 58. Briel JW, Zimmerman DD, Stoker J, Rociu E, Laméris JS, Mooi WJ *et*
2 *al.* Relationship between sphincter morphology on endoanal MRI and
3 histopathological aspects of the external anal sphincter. *International*
4 *Journal of Colorectal Disease* 2000, **15**(2):87-90.
- 5 59. Pinta T, Kylänpää ML, Luukkonen P, Tapani E, Kivisaari A, Kivisaari L.
6 Anal incontinence: diagnosis by endoanal US or endovaginal MRI.
7 *European Radiology* 2004, **14**(8):1472-7.
- 8 60. Rociu E, Stoker J, Eijkemans MJ, Schouten WR, Laméris JS. Fecal
9 incontinence: endoanal US versus endoanal MR imaging. *Radiology*
10 1999, **212**(2):453-8.
- 11 61. Deen K, I, Kumar D, Williams JG, Olliff J, Keighley MR. Anal sphincter
12 defects. Correlation between endoanal ultrasound and surgery. *Annals*
13 *of Surgery* 1993, **218**(2):201-5.
- 14 62. Meyenberger C, Bertschinger P, Zala GF, Buchmann P. Anal sphincter
15 defects in fecal incontinence: correlation between endosonography and
16 surgery. *Endoscopy* 1996, **28**(2):217-24.
- 17 63. Romano G, Rotondano G, Esposito P, Pellecchia L, Novi A. External
18 anal sphincter defects: correlation between pre-operative anal
19 endosonography and intraoperative findings. *British Journal of*
20 *Radiology* 1996, **69**(817):6-9.
- 21 64. Sentovich SM, Wong WD, Blatchford GJ. Accuracy and reliability of
22 transanal ultrasound for anterior anal sphincter injury. *Diseases of the*
23 *Colon and Rectum* 1998, **41**(8):1000-4.
- 24 65. Frudinger A, Bartram CI, Kamm MA. Transvaginal versus anal
25 endosonography for detecting damage to the anal sphincter. *AJR*
26 *American Journal of Roentgenology* 1997, **168**(6):1435-8.
- 27 66. Buch E, Alós R, Solana A, Roig JV, Fern nC, az F. Can digital
28 examination substitute anorectal manometry for the evaluation of anal
29 canal pressures? *Revista Espanola de Enfermedades Digestivas* 1998,
30 **90**(2):90-3.
- 31 67. Eckardt VF, Kanzler G. How reliable is digital examination for the
32 evaluation of anal sphincter tone? *International Journal of Colorectal*
33 *Disease* 1993, **8**(2):95-7.
- 34 68. Hill J, Corson RJ, Brandon H, Redford J, Faragher EB, Kiff ES. History
35 and examination in the assessment of patients with idiopathic fecal
36 incontinence. *Diseases of the Colon and Rectum* 1994, **37**(5):473-7.
- 37 69. Liberman H, Faria J, Ternent CA, Blatchford GJ, Christensen MA,
38 Thorson AG. A prospective evaluation of the value of anorectal
39 physiology in the management of fecal incontinence. *Diseases of the*
40 *Colon and Rectum* 2001, **44**(11):1567-74.

- 1 70. Briel JW, Stoker J, Rociu E, Laméris JS, Hop WC, Schouten WR.
2 External anal sphincter atrophy on endoanal magnetic resonance
3 imaging adversely affects continence after sphincteroplasty. *British*
4 *Journal of Surgery* 1999, **86**(10):1322-7.
- 5 71. O'Brien PE, Dixon JB, Skinner S, Laurie C, Khera A, Fonda D. A
6 prospective, randomized, controlled clinical trial of placement of the
7 artificial bowel sphincter (Acticon Neosphincter) for the control of fecal
8 incontinence. *Diseases of the Colon and Rectum* 2004, **47**(11):1852-
9 60.
- 10 72. Tillin T, Chambers M, Feldman R. Outcomes of electrically stimulated
11 gracilis neosphincter surgery. *Health Technology Assessment* 2005,
12 **9**(28).
- 13 73. Leroi AM, Parc Y, Lehur PA, Mion F, Barth X, Rullier E *et al.* Efficacy of
14 sacral nerve stimulation for fecal incontinence: results of a multicenter
15 double-blind crossover study. *Annals of Surgery* 2005, **242**(5):662-9.
- 16 74. Vaizey CJ, Kamm MA, Roy AJ, Nicholls RJ. Double-blind crossover
17 study of sacral nerve stimulation for fecal incontinence. *Diseases of the*
18 *Colon and Rectum* 2000, **43**(3):298-302.
- 19 75. Adang EM, Engel GL, Rutten FF, Geerdes BP, Baeten CG. Cost-
20 effectiveness of dynamic graciloplasty in patients with fecal
21 incontinence. *Diseases of the Colon and Rectum* 1998, **41**(6):725-33.
- 22 76. Hetzer FH, Bieler A, Hahnloser D, Lohlein F, Clavien PA, Demartines
23 N. Outcome and cost analysis of sacral nerve stimulation for faecal
24 incontinence. *Br J Surg* 2006, **93**(11):1411-7.
- 25 77. Creasey GH, Grill JH, Korsten M, U-H-S, Betz R, Anderson R *et al.* An
26 implantable neuroprosthesis for restoring bladder and bowel control to
27 patients with spinal cord injuries: a multicenter trial. *Archives of*
28 *Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation* 2001, **82**(11):1512-9.
- 29 78. Deen K, I, Kumar D, Williams JG, Grant EA, Keighley MR. Randomized
30 trial of internal anal sphincter plication with pelvic floor repair for
31 neuropathic fecal incontinence. *Diseases of the Colon and Rectum*
32 1995, **38**(1):14-8.
- 33 79. Oya M, Ortiz J, Grant EA, Chattopadhyay G, Asprer J, Keighley MRB.
34 A video proctographic assessment of the changes in pelvic floor
35 function following three forms of repair for post-obstetric neuropathic
36 faecal incontinence. *Digestive Surgery* 1994, **11**(1):20-4.
- 37 80. van Tets WF, Kuijpers JH. Pelvic floor procedures produce no
38 consistent changes in anatomy or physiology. *Diseases of the Colon*
39 *and Rectum* 1998, **41**(3):365-9.
- 40 81. Yoshioka K, Ogunbiyi OA, Keighley MR. A pilot study of total pelvic
41 floor repair or gluteus maximus transposition for postobstetric

- 1 neuropathic fecal incontinence. *Diseases of the Colon and Rectum*
2 1999, **42**(2):252-7.
- 3 82. Rongen MJ, Adang EM, van der Hoop AG, Baeten CG. One-step vs
4 two-step procedure in dynamic graciloplasty. *Colorectal Disease* 2001,
5 **3**(1):51-7.
- 6 83. Tan M, O'Hanlon DM, Cassidy M, O'Connell PR. Advantages of a
7 posterior fourchette incision in anal sphincter repair. *Diseases of the*
8 *Colon and Rectum* 2001, **44**(11):1624-9.
- 9 84. Buttafuoco A, Keighley MR. Cost of pelvic floor repair for faecal
10 incontinence. *Digestive Surgery* 2000, **17**(6):623-6.
- 11 85. Chapman AE, Geerdes B, Hewett P, Young J, Evers T, Kiroff G *et al.*
12 Systematic review of dynamic graciloplasty in the treatment of faecal
13 incontinence. *British Journal of Surgery* 2002, **89**(2):138-53.
- 14 86. Deen K, I, Oya M, Ortiz J, Keighley MR. Randomized trial comparing
15 three forms of pelvic floor repair for neuropathic faecal incontinence.
16 *British Journal of Surgery* 1993, **80**(6):794-8.
- 17 87. Davis KJ, Kumar D, Poloniecki J. Adjuvant biofeedback following anal
18 sphincter repair: a randomized study. *Alimentary Pharmacology &*
19 *Therapeutics* 2004, **20**(5):539-49.
- 20 88. Nessim A, Wexner SD, Agachan F, Alabaz O, Weiss EG, Noguerras JJ
21 *et al.* Is bowel confinement necessary after anorectal reconstructive
22 surgery? A prospective, randomized, surgeon-blinded trial. *Diseases of*
23 *the Colon and Rectum* 1999, **42**(1):16-23.
- 24 89. Hasegawa H, Yoshioka K, Keighley MR. Randomized trial of fecal
25 diversion for sphincter repair. *Diseases of the Colon and Rectum* 2000,
26 **43**(7):961-4.
- 27 90. Arnaud A, Sarles JC, Sielezneff I, Orsoni P, Joly A. Sphincter repair
28 without overlapping for fecal incontinence. *Diseases of the Colon and*
29 *Rectum* 1991, **34**(9):744-7.
- 30 91. Bartolo DC, Duthie GS. The physiological evaluation of operative repair
31 for incontinence and prolapse. *Ciba Foundation Symposium* 1990,
32 **151**:223-35.
- 33 92. Gutierrez AB, Madoff RD, Lowry AC, Parker SC, Buie WD, Baxter NN.
34 Long-term results of anterior sphincteroplasty. *Diseases of the Colon*
35 *and Rectum* 2004, **47**(5):727-31.
- 36 93. Briel JW, de Boer LM, Hop WC, Schouten WR. Clinical outcome of
37 anterior overlapping external anal sphincter repair with internal anal
38 sphincter imbrication. *Diseases of the Colon and Rectum* 1998,
39 **41**(2):209-14.

- 1 94. Elton C, Stoodley BJ. Anterior anal sphincter repair: results in a district
2 general hospital. *Annals of the Royal College of Surgeons of England*
3 2002, **84**(5):321-4.
- 4 95. Engel AF, van Baal SJ, Brummelkamp WH. Late results of anterior
5 sphincter plication for traumatic faecal incontinence. *European Journal*
6 *of Surgery* 1994, **160**(11):633-6.
- 7 96. Engel AF, Kamm MA, Sultan AH, Bartram C, I, Nicholls RJ. Anterior
8 anal sphincter repair in patients with obstetric trauma. *British Journal of*
9 *Surgery* 1994, **81**(8):1231-4.
- 10 97. Fleshman JW, Peters WR, Shemesh E, I, Fry RD, Kodner IJ. Anal
11 sphincter reconstruction: anterior overlapping muscle repair. *Diseases*
12 *of the Colon and Rectum* 1991, **34**(9):739-43.
- 13 98. Gibbs DH, Hooks VH, III. Overlapping sphincteroplasty for acquired
14 anal incontinence. *Southern Medical Journal* 1993, **86**(12):1376-80.
- 15 99. Gilliland R, Altomare DF, Moreira H, Jr., Oliveira L, Gilliland JE,
16 Wexner SD. Pudendal neuropathy is predictive of failure following
17 anterior overlapping sphincteroplasty. *Diseases of the Colon and*
18 *Rectum* 1998, **41**(12):1516-22.
- 19 100. Giordano P, Renzi A, Efron J, Gervaz P, Weiss EG, Nogueras JJ *et al.*
20 Previous sphincter repair does not affect the outcome of repeat repair.
21 *Diseases of the Colon and Rectum* 2002, **45**(5):635-40.
- 22 101. Karoui S, Leroi AM, Koning E, Menard JF, Michot F, Denis P. Results
23 of sphincteroplasty in 86 patients with anal incontinence. *Diseases of*
24 *the Colon and Rectum* 2000, **43**(6):813-20.
- 25 102. Londono-Schimmer EE, Garcia DR, Nicholls RJ, Ritchie JK, Hawley
26 PR, Thomson JP. Overlapping anal sphincter repair for faecal
27 incontinence due to sphincter trauma: five year follow-up functional
28 results. *International Journal of Colorectal Disease* 1994, **9**(2):110-3.
- 29 103. Morren GL, Hallböök O, Nyström PO, Baeten C-GM, I, Sjødahl R. Audit
30 of anal-sphincter repair. *Colorectal Disease* 2001, **3**(1):17-22.
- 31 104. Oliveira L, Pfeifer J, Wexner SD. Physiological and clinical outcome of
32 anterior sphincteroplasty. *British Journal of Surgery* 1996, **83**(4):502-5.
- 33 105. Osterberg A, Edebol-Eeg OK, Graf W. Results of surgical treatment for
34 faecal incontinence. *British Journal of Surgery* 2000, **87**(11):1546-52.
- 35 106. Rothbarth J, Bemelman WA, Meijerink W-JHJ, Buyze-Westerweel ME,
36 Van Dijk JG, Delemarre JB, V *et al.* Long-term results of anterior anal
37 sphincter repair for fecal incontinence due to obstetric injury. *Digestive*
38 *Surgery* 2000, **17**(4):390-4.

- 1 107. Sangwan YP, Collier JA, Barrett RC, Roberts PL, Murray JJ, Rusin L *et*
2 *al.* Unilateral pudendal neuropathy. Impact on outcome of anal
3 sphincter repair. *Diseases of the Colon and Rectum* 1996, **39**(6):686-9.
- 4 108. Simmang C, Birnbaum EH, Kodner IJ, Fry RD, Fleshman JW. Anal
5 sphincter reconstruction in the elderly: does advancing age affect
6 outcome? *Diseases of the Colon and Rectum* 1994, **37**(11):1065-9.
- 7 109. Ternent CA, Shashidharan M, Blatchford GJ, Christensen MA, Thorson
8 AG, Sentovich SM. Transanal ultrasound and anorectal physiology
9 findings affecting continence after sphincteroplasty. *Diseases of the*
10 *Colon and Rectum* 1997, **40**(4):462-7.
- 11 110. Young CJ, Mathur MN, Evers AA, Solomon MJ. Successful overlapping
12 anal sphincter repair: relationship to patient age, neuropathy, and
13 colostomy formation. *Diseases of the Colon and Rectum* 1998,
14 **41**(3):344-9.
- 15 111. Zorcolo L, Covotta L, Bartolo DC. Outcome of anterior sphincter repair
16 for obstetric injury: comparison of early and late results. *Diseases of*
17 *the Colon and Rectum* 2005, **48**(3):524-31.
- 18 112. Chen AS, Luchtefeld MA, Senagore AJ, Mackeigan JM, Hoyt C.
19 Pudendal nerve latency. Does it predict outcome of anal sphincter
20 repair? *Diseases of the Colon and Rectum* 1998, **41**(8):1005-9.
- 21 113. Engel AF, Lunniss PJ, Kamm MA, Phillips R-KS. Sphincteroplasty for
22 incontinence after surgery for idiopathic fistula in ano. *International*
23 *Journal of Colorectal Disease* 1997, **12**(6):323-5.
- 24 114. Fleshman JW, Dreznik Z, Fry RD, Kodner IJ. Anal sphincter repair for
25 obstetric injury: manometric evaluation of functional results. *Diseases*
26 *of the Colon and Rectum* 1991, **34**(12):1061-7.
- 27 115. Jensen LL, Lowry AC. Biofeedback improves functional outcome after
28 sphincteroplasty. *Diseases of the Colon and Rectum* 1997, **40**(2).
- 29 116. Steele SR, Lee P, Mullenix PS, Martin MJ, Sullivan ES. Is there a role
30 for concomitant pelvic floor repair in patients with sphincter defects in
31 the treatment of fecal incontinence? *International Journal of Colorectal*
32 *Disease* 2006, **21**(6):508-14.
- 33 117. Pinedo G, Vaizey CJ, Nicholls RJ, Roach R, Halligan S, Kamm MA.
34 Results of repeat anal sphincter repair. *British Journal of Surgery* 1999,
35 **86**(1):66-9.
- 36 118. Vaizey CJ, Norton C, Thornton MJ, Nicholls RJ, Kamm MA. Long-term
37 results of repeat anterior anal sphincter repair. *Diseases of the Colon*
38 *and Rectum* 2004, **47**(6):858-63.

- 1 119. Aitola P, Hiltunen KM, Matikainen M. Functional results of anterior
2 levatorplasty and external sphincter plication for faecal incontinence.
3 *Annales Chirurgiae et Gynaecologiae* 2000, **89**(1):29-32.
- 4 120. Körsgen S, Deen K, I, Keighley MR. Long-term results of total pelvic
5 floor repair for postobstetric fecal incontinence. *Diseases of the Colon
6 and Rectum* 1997, **40**(7):835-9.
- 7 121. Setti CP, Kamm MA, Nicholls RJ. Long-term results of postanal repair
8 for neurogenic faecal incontinence. *British Journal of Surgery* 1994,
9 **81**(1):140-4.
- 10 122. Abbas SM, Bissett IP, Neill ME, Parry BR. Long-term outcome of
11 postanal repair in the treatment of faecal incontinence. *ANZ journal of
12 surgery* 2005, **75**(9):783-6.
- 13 123. Rieger NA, Sarre RG, Saccone GT, Hunter A, Toouli J. Postanal repair
14 for faecal incontinence: long-term follow-up. *Australian and New
15 Zealand Journal of Surgery* 1997, **67**(8):566-70.
- 16 124. Orrom WJ, Miller R, Cornes H, Duthie G, Mortensen NJ, Bartolo DC.
17 Comparison of anterior sphincteroplasty and postanal repair in the
18 treatment of idiopathic fecal incontinence. *Diseases of the Colon and
19 Rectum* 1991, **34**(4):305-10.
- 20 125. Engel AF, van Baal SJ, Brummelkamp WH. Late results of postanal
21 repair for idiopathic faecal incontinence. *European Journal of Surgery*
22 1994, **160**(11):637-40.
- 23 126. Matsuoka H, Mavrantonis C, Wexner SD, Oliveira L, Gilliland R,
24 Pikarsky A. Postanal repair for fecal incontinence -- is it worthwhile?
25 *Diseases of the Colon and Rectum* 2000, **43**(11):1561-7.
- 26 127. Madoff RD, Rosen HR, Baeten CG, LaFontaine LJ, Cavina E, Devesa
27 M *et al.* Safety and efficacy of dynamic muscle plasty for anal
28 incontinence: lessons from a prospective, multicenter trial.
29 *Gastroenterology* 1999, **116**(3):549-56.
- 30 128. Penninckx F. Belgian experience with dynamic graciloplasty for faecal
31 incontinence. *British Journal of Surgery* 2004, **91**(7):872-8.
- 32 129. Sielezneff I, Malouf AJ, Bartolo DC, Pryde A, Douglas S. Dynamic
33 graciloplasty in the treatment of patients with faecal incontinence.
34 *British Journal of Surgery* 1999, **86**(1):61-5.
- 35 130. Thornton MJ, Kennedy ML, Lubowski DZ, King DW. Long-term follow-
36 up of dynamic graciloplasty for faecal incontinence. *Colorectal Disease*
37 2004, **6**(6):470-6.
- 38 131. Wexner SD, Baeten C, Bailey R, Bakka A, Belin B, Belliveau P *et al.*
39 Long-term efficacy of dynamic graciloplasty for fecal incontinence.
40 *Diseases of the Colon and Rectum* 2002, **45**(6):809-18.

- 1 132. Christiansen J, Sorensen M, Rasmussen OO. Gracilis muscle
2 transposition for faecal incontinence. *British Journal of Surgery* 1990,
3 **77**(9):1039-40.
- 4 133. Christiansen J, Rasmussen OO, Lindorff LK. Dynamic graciloplasty for
5 severe anal incontinence. *British Journal of Surgery* 1998, **85**(1):88-91.
- 6 134. Faucheron JL, Hannoun L, Thome C, Parc R. Is fecal continence
7 improved by nonstimulated gracilis muscle transposition? *Diseases of*
8 *the Colon and Rectum* 1994, **37**(10):979-83.
- 9 135. Rongen MJ, Uludag O, El Naggar K, Geerdes BP, Konsten J, Baeten
10 CG. Long-term follow-up of dynamic graciloplasty for fecal
11 incontinence. *Diseases of the Colon and Rectum* 2003, **46**(6):716-21.
- 12 136. Altomare DF, Binda GA, Dodi G, La Torre F, Romano G, Rinaldi M *et*
13 *al.* Disappointing long-term results of the artificial anal sphincter for
14 faecal incontinence. *British Journal of Surgery* 2004, **91**(10):1352-3.
- 15 137. Casal E, San Ildefonso A, Carracedo R, Facal C, Sánchez JA. Artificial
16 bowel sphincter in severe anal incontinence. *Colorectal Disease* 2004,
17 **6**(3):180-4.
- 18 138. Christiansen J, Rasmussen OO, Lindorff-Larsen K. Long-term results
19 of artificial anal sphincter implantation for severe anal incontinence.
20 *Annals of Surgery* 1999, **230**(1):45-8.
- 21 139. Devesa JM, Rey A, Hervas PL, Halawa KS, Larrañaga I, Svidler L *et al.*
22 Artificial anal sphincter: complications and functional results of a large
23 personal series. *Diseases of the Colon and Rectum* 2002, **45**(9):1154-
24 63.
- 25 140. Lehur PA, Glemain P, Bruley d, V, Buzelin JM, Leborgne J. Outcome of
26 patients with an implanted artificial anal sphincter for severe faecal
27 incontinence. A single institution report. *International Journal of*
28 *Colorectal Disease* 1998, **13**(2):88-92.
- 29 141. Lehur PA, Peltier G, Glemain P, Des-Varannes SB. Treatment of
30 severe anal incontinence by artificial sphincter: II. Follow-up, results
31 and indications. *Hepato-Gastro* 2000, **7**(3):193-8.
- 32 142. Lehur PA, Zerbib F, Neunlist M, Glemain P, Bruley des Varannes S.
33 Comparison of quality of life and anorectal function after artificial
34 sphincter implantation. *Diseases of the Colon and Rectum* 2002,
35 **45**(4):508-13.
- 36 143. Michot F, Costaglioli B, Leroi AM, Denis P. Artificial anal sphincter in
37 severe fecal incontinence: outcome of prospective experience with 37
38 patients in one institution. *Annals of Surgery* 2003, **237**(1):52-6.

- 1 144. Ortiz H, Armendariz P, DeMiguel M, Ruiz MD, Alós R, Roig JV.
2 Complications and functional outcome following artificial anal sphincter
3 implantation. *British Journal of Surgery* 2002, **89**(7):877-81.
- 4 145. Parker SC, Spencer MP, Madoff RD, Jensen LL, Wong WD,
5 Rothenberger DA. Artificial bowel sphincter: long-term experience at a
6 single institution. *Diseases of the Colon and Rectum* 2003, **46**(6):722-9.
- 7 146. Williams NS, Patel J, George BD, Hallan R, I, Watkins ES.
8 Development of an electrically stimulated neoanal sphincter. *Lancet*
9 1991, **338**(8776):1166-9.
- 10 147. Wong WD, Congliosi SM, Spencer MP, Corman ML, Tan P, Opelka FG
11 *et al.* The safety and efficacy of the artificial bowel sphincter for fecal
12 incontinence: results from a multicenter cohort study. *Diseases of the*
13 *Colon and Rectum* 2002, **45**(9):1139-53.
- 14 148. Lehur PA, Michot F, Denis P, Grise P, Leborgne J, Teniere P *et al.*
15 Results of artificial sphincter in severe anal incontinence. Report of 14
16 consecutive implantations. *Diseases of the Colon and Rectum* 1996,
17 **39**(12):1352-5.
- 18 149. Savoye G, Leroi AM, Denis P, Michot F. Manometric assessment of an
19 artificial bowel sphincter. *British Journal of Surgery* 2000, **87**(5):586-9.
- 20 150. Morgan R, Patel B, Beynon J, Carr ND. Surgical management of
21 anorectal incontinence due to internal anal sphincter deficiency. *British*
22 *Journal of Surgery* 1997, **84**(2):226-30.
- 23 151. Davis K, Kumar D, Poloniecki J. Preliminary evaluation of an injectable
24 anal sphincter bulking agent (Durasphere) in the management of faecal
25 incontinence. *Alimentary Pharmacology & Therapeutics* 2003,
26 **18**(2):237-43.
- 27 152. Takahashi T, Garcia OS, Valdovinos MA, Belmonte C, Barreto C,
28 Velasco L. Extended two-year results of radio-frequency energy
29 delivery for the treatment of fecal incontinence (the Secca procedure).
30 *Diseases of the Colon and Rectum* 2003, **46**(6):711-5.
- 31 153. Ganio E, Masin A, Ratto C, Altomare DF, Ripetti V, Clerico G *et al.*
32 Short-term sacral nerve stimulation for functional anorectal and urinary
33 disturbances: results in 40 patients: evaluation of a new option for
34 anorectal functional disorders. *Diseases of the Colon and Rectum*
35 2001, **44**(9):1261-7.
- 36 154. Jarrett MED, Mowatt G, Glazener C-MA, Fraser C, Nicholls RJ, Grant
37 AM *et al.* Systematic review of sacral nerve stimulation for faecal
38 incontinence and constipation. *British Journal of Surgery* 2004,
39 **91**(12):1559-69.

- 1 155. Kenefick NJ, Vaizey CJ, Cohen R-CG, Nicholls RJ, Kamm MA.
2 Medium-term results of permanent sacral nerve stimulation for faecal
3 incontinence. *British Journal of Surgery* 2002, **89**(7):896-901.
- 4 156. Matzel KE, Stadelmaier U, Hohenberger W. Innovations in fecal
5 incontinence: sacral nerve stimulation. *Diseases of the Colon and*
6 *Rectum* 2004, **47**(10):1720-8.
- 7 157. Rosen HR, Urbarz C, Holzer B, Novi G, Schiessel R. Sacral nerve
8 stimulation as a treatment for fecal incontinence. *Gastroenterology*
9 2001, **121**(3):536-41.
- 10 158. Ganio E, Realis LA, Ratto C, Doglietto GB, Masin A, Dodi G. Sacral
11 nerve modulation for fecal incontinence: functional results and
12 assessment of quality of life <http://www.colorep.it/> (accessed
13 September 2006) [accessed 2006].
14
- 15 159. Chassagne P, Jego A, Gloc P, Capet C, Trivalle C, Doucet J *et al.*
16 Does treatment of constipation improve faecal incontinence in
17 institutionalized elderly patients? *Age and Ageing* 2000, **29**(2):159-64.
- 18 160. Schnelle JF, Alessi CA, Simmons SF, Al Samarrai NR, Beck JC,
19 Ouslander JG. Translating clinical research into practice: a randomized
20 controlled trial of exercise and incontinence care with nursing home
21 residents. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society* 2002, **50**(9):1476-
22 83.
- 23 161. Schnelle JF, Kapur K, Alessi C, Osterweil D, Beck JG, Al Samarrai NR
24 *et al.* Does an exercise and incontinence intervention save healthcare
25 costs in a nursing home population? *Journal of the American Geriatrics*
26 *Society* 2003, **51**(2):161-8.
- 27 162. McCormick KA, Cella M, Scheve A, Engel BT. Cost-effectiveness of
28 treating incontinence in severely mobility-impaired long term care
29 residents. *QRB Quality Review Bulletin* 1990, **16**(12):439-43.
- 30 163. Lynch AC, Wong C, Anthony A, Dobbs BR, Frizelle FA. Bowel
31 dysfunction following spinal cord injury: a description of bowel function
32 in a spinal cord-injured population and comparison with age and
33 gender matched controls. *Spinal Cord* 2000, **38**(12):717-23.
- 34 164. Weaver L, Polosa C. Autonomic dysfunction after spinal cord injury.
35 *Progress in Brain Research* 152. 2005.
- 36 165. Craggs MD, Balasubramaniam AV, Chung EAL, Emmanuel AV.
37 Aberrant reflexes and function of the pelvic organs following spinal cord
38 injury in man. *Autonomic Neuroscience* 2006, **126-127**:355-70.
- 39
40